

**ENGLISH  
GRAMMAR  
DIGEST**

❁ **ADVANCED ESL**

❁ **TOEFL PREPARATION**

❁ **REMEDIAL REVIEW**

**TRUDY  
ARONSON**

# ENGLISH GRAMMAR DIGEST

Trudy Aronson  
*Cambria English Institute*

Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey 07632





# CONTENTS

## PREFACE

ix

- TO THE TEACHER ix
- TO THE STUDENT x
- ACKNOWLEDGMENTS x

## PRETEST

1

## One TENSES

6

- PRESENT TIME FORMS 6
  - Present Tense, 6
  - Frequency Adverbs with Present Tense, 6
  - Modals and Other Expressions in Present Time, 7
  - Present Continuous, 9
  - Modals in Continuous Form, 10
  - Present Perfect, 11
  - Present Perfect Continuous, 13
- PAST TIME FORMS 16
  - Past Tense, 16
  - Past Continuous, 17
  - Past Perfect, 19
  - Past Perfect Continuous, 20
  - Past Time Form of Modals, 22
- FUTURE TIME FORMS 26
  - Future Tense, 26
  - Modals in Future Time, 27
  - Future Continuous, 30
  - Future Perfect, 31
  - Future Perfect Continuous, 32



Two  
PASSIVE VOICE  
AND CAUSATIVE PASSIVE VOICE

CONTENTS 36

- THE PASSIVE VOICE 36
- THE CAUSATIVE PASSIVE VOICE 39

Three  
FORMATION OF QUESTIONS,  
TAG ENDINGS, AND NEGATIVE QUESTIONS

PREFACE 43

- FORMATION OF QUESTIONS 43
- TAG ENDINGS 45
- NEGATIVE QUESTIONS 47

Four  
INDIRECT SPEECH

PREFACE

50

- REPORTING VERBS 50
- SEQUENCE OF TENSES 51
- OTHER INDIRECT SPEECH FORMS 52

Five  
THE CONDITIONAL FORM

One  
TENSES

55

- CONDITIONAL CLAUSES, 55
  - Present General, 55
  - Future Possible Real, 55
  - Present and Past Unreal, 55

Six  
VERBALS

PRESENT TIME FORMS  
 Present Tense  
 Present Progressive  
 Present Perfect  
 Present Perfect Progressive  
 FUTURE TIME FORMS  
 Future Tense  
 Future Progressive  
 Future Perfect  
 Future Perfect Progressive  
 PAST TIME FORMS  
 Past Tense  
 Past Progressive  
 Past Perfect  
 Past Perfect Progressive  
 PAST FUTURE TIME FORMS  
 Past Future Tense  
 Past Future Progressive  
 Past Future Perfect  
 Past Future Perfect Progressive

63

- INFINITIVES 63
  - Continuous, 64

Perfect,	64
Passive,	65
Verbs Followed by Infinitives,	65
Infinitives in Short Responses,	67
<b>GERUNDS</b>	<b>68</b>
Gerunds with Verbs,	69
Gerunds with Other Expressions,	70
Perfect Form of the Gerund,	72
Passive Form of the Gerund,	72
Perfect Passive Form of the Gerund,	72
<b>VERB WORDS</b>	<b>74</b>
Verb Words with Modals and Auxiliaries,	74
Verb Words with Special Verbs,	74
Verb Words with Causative Active Form,	75
Verb Words with Proposal Forms,	76

## Seven PARTS OF SPEECH

82

<b>NOUNS</b>	<b>82</b>
<b>ARTICLES</b>	<b>84</b>
<b>VERBS</b>	<b>89</b>
Two-Word Verbs,	91
Verbs Followed by Indirect Objects,	91
<b>ADJECTIVES</b>	<b>92</b>
Present and Past Participles as Adjectives,	93
Adjectives After State of Being Verbs and Linking Verbs,	94
Adjectives of Emotion Followed by Adverbial <i>That</i> Clauses,	94
Comparison of Adjectives,	95
Adjectives with Countable and Uncountable Nouns,	97
Additional Rules About Adjectives,	99
<b>ADVERBS</b>	<b>100</b>
Comparison of Adverbs,	101
Other Adverbs,	102
Position of Adverbs,	106
<b>PRONOUNS</b>	<b>108</b>
Subject Pronouns,	109
Object Pronouns,	109
Possessive Adjective Pronouns,	110
Possessive Noun Pronouns,	110
Reflexive Pronouns,	110
Demonstrative Pronouns,	111
Relative Pronouns,	112
<b>PREPOSITIONS</b>	<b>116</b>



<b>Eight</b>		
<b>WRITING STRUCTURE AND FORM</b>		<b>129</b>
SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT	129	
PRONOUN-ANTECEDENT AGREEMENT	133	
TYPES OF CLAUSES AND SENTENCES	136	
Independent and Dependent Clauses,	137	
Simple, Compound, and Complex Sentences,	137	
USING CONJUNCTIONS	141	
Kinds of Conjunctions,	141	
Common Conjunctions in Sentences,	141	
ESTABLISHING A VIEWPOINT: TENSE CONSISTENCY	144	
USING PARTICIPLES AND PHRASES	145	
Modifying Adjective Phrases with Participles,	146	
Additional Uses of Participles and Phrases,	149	
PARALLEL STRUCTURE	151	
Special Word Order,	153	
BASIC RULES OF WRITTEN EXPRESSION	154	
LITERARY VARIATION IN SENTENCE ORDER	158	
<b>EPILOGUE</b>		<b>161</b>
SIMULATED TOEFL TESTS	161	
<b>SUPPLEMENT</b>		<b>180</b>
CONTRACTIONS	180	
IRREGULAR VERBS	180	
IDIOMS, TWO-WORD VERBS, AND EXPRESSIONS	182	
COMMON ERRORS IN WORD USAGE	192	
<b>ANSWERS TO TESTS</b>		<b>196</b>
<b>INDEX</b>		<b>207</b>



# PREFACE

The English Grammar Digest is an intensive review course in grammar and in writing structure for intermediate and advanced students of English as a Second Language. The book has been designed to promote good sentence construction and writing habits and to prepare students for college and university classes and for the "Structure and Written Expressions" section of the TOEFL, a college or university qualifying English test which measures knowledge of standard English.

The text progresses developmentally from grammatical structures to proper forms in sentence writing. Included are succinct, easily understood explanations; numerous examples that serve as models and reinforcement; firm reminders to avoid typical errors; contrasts and comparisons of structures; oral and writing reinforcement; and a variety of exercises including progressively-complex TOEFL-type tests plus five full simulated TOEFL tests on "Structure and Written Expression."

In the Supplement of the book are the principal parts of irregular verbs; common errors in word usage; and a considerable number of popular idioms and two-word verbs illustrated by examples.

The book is intended for class and independent study and may be used in either short-term or long-term courses. Answers to the tests and references to the explanations are on pages 199 to 206. A complete index is provided on pages 207 to 214.

## TO THE TEACHER

There is no single approach or absolute chronology in the use of this book. The procedure will inevitably vary, depending on the time allowed for the course, the course itself, and the nature of the class. Since both aural and visual approaches are effective, we recommend, after the initial presentation, reading selected material aloud as the students follow, emphasizing points and answering questions as they arise. Students may then be assigned to review the material and to prepare for the exercises and tests. Teachers of short-term courses can cover a relatively large number of grammar points at each class session and can assign large portions for independent study and review. The graphic nature of the explanations and examples facilitates home reinforcement. Section tests, too, may be assigned as homework wherein the need for specific areas of review will become quickly apparent to the student.

Any exercise may be oral, written, or both; omitted or included; executed and corrected at home or in class. It must be emphasized that all of the grammar and writing points in the book, including those dealing with less common forms, are important in preparation for the TOEFL. Questions on the simulated TOEFL tests are deliberately complex in preparation for the actual tests.



Teachers, particularly those of longer-term courses, may choose to have their students remove either all or a part of the perforated answer pages, returning them to the students at a later date. For writing improvement we suggest that teachers require their students to do all of the written exercises, to write complete answers to the oral exercises, and to initiate sentences of their own, patterning them after the modeled examples. For the oral exercises, "Practice Asking and Answering Questions Such as the Following," teachers may wish to pair students for classroom practice in order to promote correct usage in speaking as well as in writing.

The pretest, given initially to apprise students of the kind of knowledge they will need, should be given again at the end of the course with the four other simulated TOEFL tests.

## TO THE STUDENT

Carefully study each section of the book, including the Supplement, until you thoroughly understand and become familiar with the material presented. Make use of the index and the table of contents to find specific subject matter. The goal to strive for is, of course, to apply what you have learned. It is advisable to examine the sentence examples in the book for their construction, vocabulary, idioms, and expressions as well as for their grammatical structures. Any words that you don't understand should be looked up in a dictionary.

We hope that you will retain the English Grammar Digest as a reference book, referring to it freely and repeatedly, and that the book will continue to benefit you in your pursuit of good English usage.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I wish to thank Dean de La Peña and Director Fimbres of the Cambria English Institute in Los Angeles for the opportunity to develop an intensive review course in grammar and writing structure preparatory to college and university classes and preparatory to taking the TOEFL and other qualifying English tests.

*Trudy Aronson*



# PRETEST

## STRUCTURE AND WRITTEN EXPRESSION

Time—25 minutes

Directions: In sentences 1–15 select the word or phrase that best completes the sentence and, with your pencil, fill in the circle marked A, B, C, or D, as in the example below.

Peter's jacket cost \_\_\_\_\_ Jack's.

- (A) twice more than
- (B) two times more as
- (C) twice as much as
- (D) twice more as

The correct answer above is (C).

1. None of the clocks in the old section of the city work anymore, but they \_\_\_\_\_ perfectly.  
(A) were used to work  
(B) were used to working  
(C) use to work  
(D) used to work
2. Some waterspouts \_\_\_\_\_ begin over the water and, with great speed, move towards the shore.  
(A) alike some hurricanes  
(B) like some hurricanes  
(C) are like some hurricanes  
(D) which they are like some hurricanes
3. In the zoo there was \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) a hundred-years-old elephant  
(B) hundred-year-old elephant  
(C) a hundred-years-aged elephant  
(D) a hundred-year-old elephant



4. The governor has repeatedly stated that, before he leaves office, he \_\_\_\_\_ balance the budget. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
(A) would like  
(B) had wanted to  
(C) would like to  
(D) likes to
5. Behavioral scientists say that it is essential that an infant \_\_\_\_\_ loving attention. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
(A) be given  
(B) is given  
(C) should be given  
(D) receives
6. The microphone went dead while the narrator \_\_\_\_\_ the cast. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
(A) was introduced  
(B) was introducing  
(C) has been introducing  
(D) had introduced
7. \_\_\_\_\_, the students placed their pencils on their desks and left the room. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
(A) Being finished the test  
(B) All the test now being over  
(C) Before the bell's ringing  
(D) Having completed the test
8. In the morning the streets were flooded. There \_\_\_\_\_ a cloudburst during the night. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
(A) must have been  
(B) has been  
(C) must be  
(D) must to been
9. Although the city is small, its library is as complete \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
(A) as a large city  
(B) like a large city  
(C) as that of a large city  
(D) like larger cities
10. The transportation director favors repairing existing highway systems \_\_\_\_\_ new highways. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
(A) rather than to build  
(B) instead of to build  
(C) instead to build  
(D) rather than building
11. Before Matisse, the famous French artist, \_\_\_\_\_ his own style of painting, he had painted in the classical style. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
(A) developed  
(B) had developed  
(C) was develop  
(D) will have developed



12. Daniel Webster, \_\_\_\_\_ for his brilliant oratory, made his most famous speech in the Senate in 1830  
 (A) who was knowing (B) known (C) was known (D) having known
13. Can you tell me \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 (A) who Babe Ruth was (B) who was Babe Ruth (C) whom Babe Ruth was (D) whom was Babe Ruth
14. North America produces a great deal more wheat \_\_\_\_\_  
 (A) as South America (B) than does South America (C) like South America does (D) than like South America
15. Most doctors agree that exercise improves the circulation of the blood; \_\_\_\_\_ there are doctors who believe that excessive exercise may do some damage.  
 (A) on the contrary (B) otherwise (C) on the other hand (D) therefore

Directions: In questions 16–40 select the underlined word or phrase that is *not* acceptable in standard written English and fill in the circle marked A, B, C, or D, as in the example below.

Keeping clean is surely one of the most important rule of good hygiene.  
 A B C D

The correct answer above is (D).

16. Nobody had the opportunity during the course of several meetings to express their opinion on the subject of increased taxes.  
 A B C D
17. Some art connoisseurs have remarked that Picasso was more versatile than any artist.  
 A B C D
18. Rarely are animals products, such as meat, milk, or eggs, sold directly to the consumer.  
 A B C D
19. The traffic's noise is becoming a problem to the Smiths, accustomed as they are to the peacefulness of country life.  
 A B C D



20. The article stating the state Supreme Court had overturned the decision made  
 A B C  
by the lower court on the issue of high-rise construction. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 D
21. The winner had indeed demonstrated remarkable reserves of energy, which  
 A  
was apparently available to him at the crucial time. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 B C D
22. A diamond, used not only in jewelry but in industrial cutting devices, is one of  
 A B C  
nature's hardest substances. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 D
23. In a corporation it is usual the chairman who presides over meetings.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
24. Having worked with the elderly for several years, Mrs. Jones knows how impor-  
 A B  
tant it is to behave kindly and with thoughtfulness towards them. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 C D
25. The photosynthesis process, which plants absorb carbon dioxide and release  
 A B  
oxygen, is just the opposite of that of man. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 C D
26. Although Ponce de Leon didn't find the "Fountain of Youth" which he  
had sought but he did discover a beautiful area of land named Florida.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
27. Those who shop regularly for food and clothing generally they are aware of  
 A B C D  
quality and prices. (A) (B) (C) (D)
28. It was King Louis XIV who had the magnificent Palace of Versailles build;  
 A  
however, the cost was so great that the people of France were angered.  
 B C D  
 (A) (B) (C) (D)
29. The people of Pakistan, which land is quite mountainous, are nevertheless pri-  
 A B C D  
marily farmers. (A) (B) (C) (D)
30. Much of the forest, along with the farmland, near the Mount Saint Helens vol-  
 A B  
cano, appears to be destroyed at the time of the eruption. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 C D
31. Of the two suspension bridges in Northern California, the Bay Bridge, not the  
 A  
Golden Gate Bridge, is the largest. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 B C D
32. The man avoided, by turning suddenly into a driveway, to hit the child riding a  
 A B C  
tricycle across the street. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 D
33. The inventor found himself laying awake at night in an effort to understand the  
 A B C D  
error in his design. (A) (B) (C) (D)



34. Naturally, one would not suspect that people like ourselves would neglect to vote in an election. A B C D (A B C D)
35. Vaslav Nijinsky was the Polish ballet dancer leaped remarkable heights into the air. A B C D (A B C D)
36. Predicting a shortage of young workers in the near future, unemployment and low wages are expected to decrease, researchers say. A B C D (A B C D)
37. The reason that the building industry declined was because the interest rate on loans was so high. A B C D (A B C D)
38. Children should be given immunizing injections in order to prevent them catching some of the serious diseases. A B C D (A B C D)
39. If Keats didn't die at the young age of 26, he might have become England's greatest lyric poet. A B C D (A B C D)
40. We found the food in the Thai restaurant to be quite different than that in the Vietnamese restaurant. A B C D (A B C D)



One

# TENSES

دوام permanence  
 ک پرسنل staff  
 شرکت کردن attend  
 کلمات هم‌معنی homonym  
 ک قوس گوتیک gothic arch  
 ک قوس گوتیک gothic  
 ک قوس گوتیک arch

عادی customary

## PRESENT TIME FORMS

### Present Tense

The present tense is used to express a general truth or fact. The action often occurs regularly or habitually. Generally the present tense verb conveys a sense of permanence. (Notice, in the following examples, that the verb agrees with the subject.)

1. The X.X. Company *employs* a staff of forty engineers.
2. As in other languages, changes in English *continue* to occur.
3. Four times a year, the department heads *attend* a conference.
4. Homonyms *sound* alike but they *don't have* the same meaning.
5. A gothic arch *is* one which *rises* to a point.
6. Kenji and Alain never *miss* their weekly bridge game.
7. The Chans *aren't* home today. They're at their studio.
8. I *understand* that there *are* about 16,000 kinds of butterflies in the world.
9. Whenever the science class students *have* time, they *like* to look at the slides of earlier field trips.
10. If (or: when) one travels to other countries, one learns about other cultures. (or: one will learn about other cultures).

**NOTE:** Sometimes will plus the root verb is used to describe an expected customary result.

Compare:

When one listens, one learns a lot.

When one listens, one will learn a lot.

Present tense is also used for direct commands, requests, and suggestions.

(You) *Open* your books and turn to page 81.

Willie, (you) *read* your essay please.

(You) *Try* to swim with your eyes open.

### Frequency Adverbs With Present Tense

Some frequency adverbs are: *frequently, usually, sometimes, generally, always, occasionally, often, never, seldom, rarely*. Notice the placement in the following sentences. These adverbs are usually before the "action" verb but after the "be" verb.

1. Students *often have* difficulty deciding on a major.



shrewd اشتباكون confuse اشتباكون  
 distinction تفرقة  
 psychological روان  
 scarcely ندرت

- 2. Many of the club members *are seldom* at the meetings.
- 3. A shrewd politician *generally understands* psychological distinctions.

**NOTE:** The following adverbs are already negative in sense, so you do not use a negative form with them: never, seldom, rarely, scarcely, hardly, barely.  
 (wrong): (He ~~doesn't~~ seldom smile.)  
 RIGHT: He *seldom* smiles.

Do not confuse adverbs of measure with adverbs of frequency. Adverbs of measure refer to "how much" and express an insufficiency or some difficulty (scarcely, hardly, barely, all similar in meaning). Frequency adverbs refer to "how often" (never, seldom, rarely).

- (wrong): (He scarcely attends class.)
- RIGHT: He *rarely* attends class.
- RIGHT: Because of his hearing loss, he *scarcely* hears me when I speak.

The following sentences illustrate the use and placement of frequency adverbs with negative constructions. Notice that the frequency adverbs are placed before the contraction, with the exception of *always*.

- The history lectures in Room 22 *sometimes aren't* interesting.
- They *generally don't* retire before midnight.
- He *doesn't always* leave before six o'clock. Sometimes he works until seven o'clock.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

- (wrong): (She complains that he ~~doesn't~~ sometimes listen to her.)
- RIGHT: She complains that he *sometimes doesn't* listen to her.
- (wrong): (Mr. Moto often go on business trips.)
- RIGHT: Mr. Moto often *goes* on business trips.
- (wrong): Although Rhode Island is the smallest state in the United States, it ~~don't~~ have the fewest number of people.)
- RIGHT: Although Rhode Island is the smallest state in the United States, it *doesn't have* the fewest number of people.
- (wrong): (Kevin is never forgetting to send birthday cards to his friends.)
- RIGHT: Kevin *never forgets* to send birthday cards to his friends.
- (wrong): (Mrs. Rossi has thirty years.)
- RIGHT: Mrs. Rossi *is thirty*. Mrs. Rossi is *thirty years old*. Mrs. Rossi is *thirty years of age*. Mrs. Rossi is *a thirty-year-old woman*.
- (wrong): (There is still people in California who ~~searches~~ for gold.)
- RIGHT: There *are* still people in California who *search* for gold.
- (wrong): (The poor man isn't hardly able to walk.)
- RIGHT: The poor man *is hardly* able to walk.

Modals and Other Expressions in Present Time

Modals are auxiliaries which add meaning to the verb. Frequently they are used in a present tense sense; that is, they are used to express statements of general truth and habitual



advisability  
 regulation  
 deer  
 bridge  
 rhinoceros

action. The headings below classify the modals and expressions according to their general meaning. Modals are: *can, could, may, might, shall, should, will, would, must, need.*

Necessity and Requirement

1. One must obey the laws of the country in which he or she resides.
2. Every night the performers must be in the theater by 7:00 P.M.
3. At most public swimming pools people have to take a shower before entering the pool.
4. For good nutrition, one needs a balanced diet.

No Necessity

1. People don't need a lot of money in order to be happy.
2. Gretchen doesn't have to work Saturdays.

Assumption: "Probably True"

Must and must not are frequently used to mean that one logically assumes or concludes something.

1. Mrs. Lindbloom is absent today; she must be ill.
2. Shuo always gets excellent grades. He must study hard every night.
3. I no longer see Miss Prinz in the reception room. She must not work there anymore.

Expectation or Advisability

1. People should return things that they borrow.
2. Joe shouldn't practice his drums after 10:00 P.M.
3. News announcers ought to be objective when they report the news.
4. He is supposed to remain in bed for at least one week.
5. If one doesn't want to gain weight, one had better eat low-calorie food.

Possibility: "Perhaps" or "Perhaps Not"

1. The doctor may not be in; he may not work on Wednesdays.
2. That store may or may not sell stamps; I'm not sure.
3. Ginny seems quiet today. She might (or: may) be worried about something.

Permission: No Permission

1. In this park people may (or: can) cook food if they want to.
2. According to health regulations, individuals can't take pets into markets.
3. State laws say that hunters must not kill deer out of season.

Ability: Inability

"Know How To" "Not Know How To"; "Be Able To" "Not Be Able To"; "Can" "Cannot"

1. Eli knows how to play bridge but his brother doesn't know how to play bridge.
2. A rhinoceros isn't able to see well but it is able to run fast.
3. Minoru can write English well but he can't speak it well.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

- (wrong): (Clarissa should think her mother is wise because she frequently asks her mother  
 for advice.)
- RIGHT: Clarissa must think her mother is wise because she frequently asks her mother for  
 advice.
- (wrong): (Every day Mrs. Tuch must to examine the receipts.)



- ✓<sup>d</sup> RIGHT: Every day Mrs. Tuch *must examine* the receipts.  
 (wrong): (Everyone ~~suppose~~ to put the book on the shelf when he is through.)
- ✓<sup>i</sup> RIGHT: Everyone *is supposed to* put the book on the shelf when he is through.

### Present Continuous

The *present continuous tense* is used to express action that the subject is currently in the process of or in the middle of doing. The present continuous conveys a temporary sense; the action is expected to cease within a few minutes, a few hours, a week, a month, a period, a term, a semester, etc.

auxiliary *be* + *-ing* form of the verb (present participle)

Compare:

Present Tense: Dr. Newsom *teaches* physics.  
 Present Continuous Tense: Dr. Newsom *is teaching* physics this period.

Clues such as the following are often used with the present continuous: *Look! Listen! right now, this period, today, this week, at the present time, currently, at this moment, for the time being, temporarily.*

1. Listen! Won Yong *is singing* a folk song from his native land.
2. Please don't disturb her. She's *sleeping*.
3. Tom's *taking* a course in chemistry **this semester**.
4. **At the present time**, the flight attendants *are negotiating* a contract.
5. What program *are you watching?*
6. Is anyone *using* the telephone?
7. Ms. Mora *is* a ski instructor but **currently** she's *selling* shoes.
8. The students who *are taking* the test right now *are being* very careful not to make any errors.

---

NOTE: *Being*, the present participle of *be*, is used in judging behavior:  
 At this moment, she is being careful (silly; patient, careless, foolish, etc.).

---

9. Don't you think they're *being* foolish to worry about it at this time?
10. I'm *not teaching* this month. I'm *working* on a special project.
11. She prefers a place of her own; **for the time being**, however, she *is staying* with her aunt.

---

NOTE: When the emphasis is on the subject's whereabouts, put the present participle (*-ing* form) after the place.

---

12. Richard *is* in the sound studio *recording* music.
13. Peter's in the laboratory **at this time** *injecting* the mice with the new vaccine.
14. Some designers *are* in Paris **this month** *viewing* this year's collection.
15. Last term Veronica was in Mr. Vernon's class but **this term** she's in Mr. Mack's class *learning* how to construct scenery.

---

EXCEPTION: The following verbs generally do *not* express an ongoing or continuous action. They express a state of mind, ownership, or the senses: *know, understand, believe, remember, think, love, hate, like, prefer, appreciate, need, want, own, have, possess, belong, cost, owe; see, notice, recognize, perceive, seem, appear (seem), look like, resemble, hear, smell, taste.*

---



The child resembles his father.  
 This soup that you made tastes delicious.  
 The red sweater belongs to Myrna.  
 Listen! I hear a train.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

- (wrong): (Sammy can't come with us today because he completes his assignment.)  
 ✓ RIGHT: Sammy can't come with us today because he's *completing* his assignment.  
 (wrong): (My sisters, Sylvia, Conny, and Bea, visit me this week.)  
 ✓ RIGHT: My sisters, Sylvia, Conny, and Bea, *are visiting* me this week.  
 (wrong): (Mr. Stern is in his office dictate a letter.)  
 ✓ RIGHT: Mr Stern *is* in his office *dictating* a letter.  
 (wrong): (Wisely, Patty isn't believing everything she reads in the newspaper.)  
 ✓ RIGHT: Wisely, Patty *doesn't believe* everything she reads in the newspaper.  
 (wrong): (You may go into the baby's room. She doesn't sleep now.)  
 ✓ RIGHT: You may go into the baby's room. She *isn't sleeping now*.

### Modals in Continuous Form

Modals (and other expressions) can be used in a continuous form to express the continuing, ongoing nature of the action.

modal + be + -ing form of the verb

- Let's go see the wild flowers. They *should be blooming* now.
- Ornithologists are careful not to disturb rare birds that *might be sitting* on their eggs.
- Computers are so sophisticated today that people *must be wondering* what will come next.
- The guard *is supposed to be inside protecting* the building.
- I'd rather not visit them now; they *might (or may) be eating* dinner.
- I'm not sure where Mrs. Ngoc is, but she *could be* in the film lab *developing* some photographs.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

- (wrong): (Irma can't fall asleep. She may worry about the test tomorrow.)  
 ✓ RIGHT: Irma can't fall asleep. She *may be worrying* about the test tomorrow.  
 (wrong): (Instead of spending his whole salary, he ought to saving some of it.)  
 ✓ RIGHT: Instead of spending his whole salary, he *ought to be saving* some of it.

### EXERCISE I. 1.

The structure in the parentheses is incorrect. Write the correct form.

- Todd (~~don't have~~) a car, so he (~~is taking~~) a train home on weekends. *doesn't have takes*
- Whenever Harry (~~have~~) free time, he (~~like~~) to work on model ships. *has likes*
- The chairman (~~prepares~~) a speech today for the company meeting. *is preparing*
- Professor Pomerane (~~scarcely~~) misses a class even though he (~~writes~~) a book this year. *scarcely writes*
- The postman looks like a snowman. It (~~must snow~~) heavily outside. *is snowing*
- I (~~can't hardly~~) see! The wind (~~blows~~) hard and the sand (~~gets~~) in my eyes. *can hardly see blows gets*
- In our class there (~~is~~) people from many different countries; therefore our teacher (~~is planning~~, usually) the lessons carefully. *are is planning*



8. Gemma (should to be) working on the project with John but she's in the recreation room (plays) ping-pong.
9. Ken (has) only (thirteen years) but he (is appearing) older.
10. Although Eli (don't know) to draw very well, he (is having) an excellent sense of color.

### EXERCISE 1. 2.

Practice asking and answering the following questions. Answer in complete sentences.

1. What do you usually do in the evenings?
2. What television programs do you watch on a regular basis?
3. What are you doing now?
4. What are you supposed to be doing?
5. What subjects are you taking this term?
6. What kinds of sports do you know how to play?
7. What kind of person do you admire?
8. Where are you staying this year?

### Present Perfect

The *present perfect tense* refers to a time period from some point in the past to the present time.

*have or has + the past participle of the verb.*

There are two types of present perfect action:

1. Action that begins in the past and continues to the present.  
The Waltons *have owned* a toy store for seventeen years.
2. Action that is completed before the present.  
My niece Barbara *has bought* a new car.

Words often used to show continued action from the past to the present are: *since, for, up to the present, until now, so far, for the past hour, for the past few days, in a long time, for a short time, in quite a while, all day, all week, lately.*

**NOTE:** Use *for* to show duration of time. (Sometimes the word *for* is implied; that is, it is understood but not stated.)

She has lived in the United States *for* six years.  
She has lived in the United States six years.

**NOTE:** Use *since* in a phrase or a clause to show when the action began.

He has studied English *since September*. (phrase)  
He has studied English *since he arrived*. (The past tense is used in the "since clause.")

Below are examples of the *present perfect tense* describing *continued action from the past to the present*.

1. Marvin and Hal *have worked* together as partners for twelve years.
2. How long *have you taken* music lessons?
3. *Since* he graduated from college, he's (he has) *attended* every reunion.



4. So far, they've enjoyed the biology class very much.
5. For the past few nights he has slept on the floor.
6. Miss Arnoff hasn't taught the physics class in a long time.
7. Lately, the company has had financial problems.

(The above examples may also be in the present perfect continuous tense. See PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS).

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (They are in the same class the past three years.)  
 xxxxx

RIGHT: They have been in the same class the past three years.

(wrong): (Perhaps the animal is ill; it didn't eat anything since Monday.)  
 xxxxxxxxxxx

RIGHT: Perhaps the animal is ill; it hasn't eaten anything since Monday.

Below are examples of the *present perfect tense* describing action completed at some point from the past to the present. Unlike the past tense, the action has no association with the time it took place. We are not told (nor is it implied) when the action occurred; the time of the action is unimportant. The intention is simply to state that an action took place one or more times; often it is implied that the action may occur again in the future. (Although the action is actually past, this form is commonly used in affiliation with present time.) Words commonly used are: *many times, several times, once, twice, three times etc., ever, finally, just, already, recently*. The words *not, never, still, and yet* are used with the negative. Frequently we use present perfect with superlative degree adjectives (best, funniest, the most exciting etc.).

1. Claudia has the smallest camera I have ever seen.
2. The Smiths are fortunate because they have already found an apartment (or: they have found an apartment already).
3. Logan has studied music but he has never been inside of a concert hall.
4. Computers have become smaller and easier to use.
5. They have eaten in that garden restaurant many times.
6. Engineers have just repaired one of the damaged bridges.
7. There are a number of national parks that we still haven't visited.
8. Have you flown on a plane only once?
9. I believe that Joel has finally reached a decision.
10. Mr. Yves has just received an offer for a job but he hasn't decided what to do about it yet (or: he hasn't yet decided what to do about it).

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Cora was never in a foreign country.)  
 xxxxxxxxxxx

RIGHT: Cora has never been in a foreign country.

(wrong): (She works there for a long time.)  
 xxxxxxx

RIGHT: She has worked there for a long time.

(wrong): (Mr. Moore has took a leave of absence.)  
 xxxxxx

RIGHT: Mr. Moore has taken a leave of absence.

(wrong): (He has the most interesting collection of coins we ever saw.)  
 xxxxxxxxxxx

RIGHT: He has the most interesting collection of coins we have ever seen.

(wrong): (Since he has joined the group, he performed as a soloist.)  
 xxxxxxxxxxx

RIGHT: Since he joined the group, he has performed as a soloist.

(wrong): (When have you been in Alaska?)  
 xxxxxxxxxxx



- RIGHT: When *were* you in Alaska?  
 (wrong): (So far the girls didn't miss a single class.)  
 RIGHT: So far the girls *haven't missed* a single class.  
 (wrong): (In what year have you begun to study law?)  
 RIGHT: In what year *did you begin* to study law?

### Present Perfect Continuous

The *present perfect continuous* emphasizes the continuing sense of the action from an earlier time to the present.

aux. *have been* or *has been* + *-ing* form of the verb

It *has been raining* in London since our arrival.

(Or: It has rained in London since our arrival.) (Either the present perfect or present perfect continuous may be used when the verb expresses continued action from the past to the present.)

Length of time is mentioned or implied with present perfect continuous.

1. The church bells *have been ringing* all morning.
2. The finance committee *has been working* on its budget for nearly a month.
3. Because of poor sales, corporate profit *has been decreasing* lately.
4. Dennis may change his major because of the problems he's *been having* in mathematics.
5. Armando and Cedric *have been* in the music library *listening* to some tapes.
6. The girls *haven't been arguing*. They've *been discussing* politics.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Mikhail has been repairing his car a number of times.) not a continuing action

RIGHT: Mikhail *has repaired* his car a number of times.

RIGHT: Mikhail *has been repairing* his car since 6:00 A.M. this morning.

Below is a synopsis of present and past-to-present time forms:

Permanent fact:	Debby can dance beautifully. She dances in shows.
Past to present:	Debby has danced in a musical show for two years.
Temporary:	Debby is dancing in a show in Dallas this week.
Past to present:	Debby has been dancing in a musical show five nights a week since I met her.
Completed action at points from past to present:	Debby has danced in musical shows hundreds of times.
(Past tense:)	(Debby danced in an award-winning show a year ago.)

### EXERCISE I. 3.

Complete the following sentences. Use the present perfect and when appropriate, the present perfect continuous, of the verb in the parentheses.

1. For eight months I (take) \_\_\_\_\_ an exercise class.
2. The college (offer) \_\_\_\_\_ parent-education classes since June.
3. Brian (see) \_\_\_\_\_ the Statue of Liberty twice.
4. He's hungry because he (eat, not) \_\_\_\_\_ in seven hours.
5. Hugh, the bus driver, (receive, just) \_\_\_\_\_ an award for safe driving.
6. The last few years they (grow) \_\_\_\_\_ their own vegetables.







7. Our cactus plant \_\_\_\_\_ magnificent flowers once a year. (A B C D)  
 A is been producing C have produced  
 B producing D produces
8. Mr. Sims is in the newspaper room \_\_\_\_\_ to find a particular article. (A B C D)  
 A trying C tries  
 B try D he's trying
9. The accountants are examining the new calculators but they \_\_\_\_\_ financial matters. (A B C D)  
 A should to discuss C are supposed to be discussing  
 B supposed to discuss D must be discussing
10. Ever since Picasso's paintings went on exhibit, there \_\_\_\_\_ large crowds at the museum every day. (A B C D)  
 A is C has been  
 B have been D are being

MIXED EXERCISE 1: PART B

Fill in the circled letter that represents the *incorrect* form, as in 1. Before you answer each question, think about: clues, sentence logic, subject-verb agreement, etc. Be able to explain why the word or phrase you have chosen is not acceptable and how you can correct it.

1. Although the tickets have just went on sale, the students are rushing to buy them. (A B C D)  
 A B C D
2. Emanuel being careful not to make grammatical errors while he's writing his composition. (A B C D)  
 A B C D
3. His English is excellent because he has been speaking English since he has been a boy of twelve. (A B C D)  
 A B C D
4. The plants in their garden looks unhealthy because they haven't had enough sunlight. (A B C D)  
 A B C D
5. Whenever the days are very warm, the animals in the wild animal zoo aren't seldom active. (A B C D)  
 A B C D
6. Jareonta, the student who makes a speech right now, is majoring in drama and hopes some day to become a great actress. (A B C D)  
 A B C D
7. Apparently the plant manager has left the country. He may be in Europe negotiate a contract. (A B C D)  
 A B C D
8. Even though the bankers are still arranging the loan, the architect prepares the building plans. (A B C D)  
 A B C D



9. Although the doctor is usually available for office visits, he isn't sometimes able to make house calls.

10. When disasters occur in local communities, it is the students who have been

agreeing to help again and again.

agree  
متفقين

who have agreed

past perfect continuous

do  
جواب  
Jummi  
subject

PAST TIME FORMS

Past Tense

The *past tense* is used to express a completed action which took place at a specified time in the past. The specified time is either stated or implied.

- Stated: Our friends *were* late for the concert last night.  
 Implied: Our friends were late for the concert. (*The concert* refers to a special event. A special event is understood to be held at a specific time.)

**NOTE:** More than one past tense may be used in a sentence when the actions occurred in the past at the same time.

1. When Alice *lost* her puppy, she *cried*.
2. The Wymans *attended* the art auction but they *didn't buy* any of the paintings.
3. Historians believe that the Chinese *invented* glasses about 2,400 years ago.
4. As soon as the actress *began* to speak, everyone *applauded*.
5. When the institution *ran* daily counseling sessions, absenteeism *decreased* significantly.
6. Last week the commissioner *had to attend* five meetings which *took place* consecutively.
7. At the conclusion of the exhibition, the scientist *indicated* that the dolphins *were able to distinguish* certain commands.
8. When my father was a young man, he *could ride* a horse as expertly as a cowboy.
9. Mrs. Siegel *knew how to speak* Chinese years ago but she has forgotten how.

**NOTE:** In the case of achieving a goal, use "be able to," not "could."  
 Steve applied everywhere and finally he *was able to get* a good job.  
 (wrong). (Steve applied everywhere and finally he *could get* a good job.)

*Used to* and *would* are used to refer to frequently repeated action in the past. *Used to* implies "not anymore."

- When I was a child, I *used to ice skate*.  
 When Kuang saw a beautiful sunset, he *would watch* it until it disappeared.  
 There *used to be* bluebirds in the northeast region but they disappeared some years ago.  
 Every time Elsie heard a particular song, she *would become* sad.



**NOTE:** Don't confuse *used to* with *be used to*, *become used to*, or *get used to*. The last three expressions refer to activity to which one has become accustomed, that is, a customary, comfortable activity. Any tense may be used.  
 Ted doesn't mind getting up at 4:00 a.m. because he *is used to* it.  
 At first Betty was afraid of driving on the freeways but she finally *has become used to* it (or: *has gotten used to* it).

### Use past tense when referring to the deceased.

Unfortunately, their dog Peppy, which *was* a cocker spaniel, was killed last week.

Present and past auxiliary verbs *do*, *does*, and *did* are sometimes used in statements for emphasis.

I agree with you. You *do* have a good reason for being angry.  
 Judy thinks that Donald doesn't like her, but he *does* like her.  
 She certainly *did* persist in presenting her opinion.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

- (wrong): (The earliest immigrants have come to America for religious freedom.)  
 RIGHT: The earliest immigrants *came* to America for religious freedom.  
 (wrong): (She didn't go out last night because she has a headache.)  
 RIGHT: She didn't go out last night because she *had* a headache.  
 (wrong): (Although she is no longer living, we think of her as a woman who has great courage and kindness.)  
 RIGHT: Although she is no longer living, we think of her as a woman who *had* great courage and kindness.  
 (wrong): (Scott rung the doorbell four times before Ann opened the door.)  
 RIGHT: Scott *rang* the doorbell four times before Ann opened the door.  
 (wrong): (She was used to live in Ohio but now she lives in Maryland.)  
 RIGHT: She *used to live* in Ohio but now she lives in Maryland.  
 (wrong): (Jesse told me that you was interested in studying sculpture.)  
 RIGHT: Jesse told me that you *were* interested in studying sculpture.  
 (wrong): (One of the shipping clerks confirmed the fact that the plane did had a capacity load.)  
 RIGHT: One of the shipping clerks confirmed the fact that the plane *did have* a capacity load.

### Past Continuous

The *past continuous tense* is used in sentences with two past actions to show that, while one action was going on, another action occurred.

aux. *was* or *were* + *-ing* form of the verb

While I *was taking* a bath, the telephone *rang*.

The *past continuous* describes the *longer action*; the *past tense* describes the *shorter action*. (*While* and *as* are often used with the past continuous form.)



1. While the farmers *were planting* crops, a windstorm *struck*.
2. Steve *was working* on his income tax form when his friends *invited* him to go to a baseball game.
3. As people *were beginning* to leave their seats, the violinist *announced* an encore.
4. Girard *thought* that his friend Luis *was being* reckless when he *didn't stop* for a red traffic light.
5. Traffic *resumed* while city workers *were still removing* debris from the street.
6. The president and his party *were* on a helicopter *returning* from an inspection of the area when they *heard* the news.

The **past continuous** is often used in connection with the preceding statement and also in response to a question.

7. She didn't want to interrupt him. He *was counting* the receipts.
8. "Where were you last night?" "I *was in the library reading*."

Sometimes the **past continuous** is used to emphasize the continuing sense of one of the two past actions even though the actions occurred during the same time span.

Miguel *memorized* the new words while he *was eating* breakfast.

The **past continuous** is sometimes used to stress two continuing actions.

While Lynn *was sewing*, Esther *was painting*.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (He cut himself as he shaved.)

RIGHT: He cut himself as he *was shaving*.

(wrong): (The maintenance man was replacing the broken window.)

RIGHT: While the maintenance man *was replacing* the broken window, two birds *flew* into the room.

(wrong): (While we were in the den watch television, we heard a noise.)

RIGHT: While we *were* in the den *watching* television, we heard a noise.

**EXERCISE I. 5.**

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate verb form, past tense or past continuous.

1. A young fellow (deliver) \_\_\_\_\_ a telegram to Shiraz while the latter (entertain) \_\_\_\_\_ friends.
2. When I (walk) \_\_\_\_\_ in the rain, I suddenly (see) \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful rainbow.
3. While we (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ the play, an usher (come over) \_\_\_\_\_ to us to check our tickets.
4. The engineer (hear, not) \_\_\_\_\_ the warning bell because he (be) \_\_\_\_\_ in the engine room (check) \_\_\_\_\_ the gauges.
5. When the inspector (hear) \_\_\_\_\_ the noise, he immediately (investigate) \_\_\_\_\_.
6. While the racing car (turn) \_\_\_\_\_ the corner, one of the rear wheels (come) \_\_\_\_\_ loose.
7. Leah (demonstrate) \_\_\_\_\_ a dance step when she (trip) \_\_\_\_\_ on a rug and (fall) \_\_\_\_\_.



8. Sean (can play, not) \_\_\_\_\_ hockey this morning because he (have to work) \_\_\_\_\_ in his brother's store.
9. Unfortunately, the brothers (move) \_\_\_\_\_ the furniture in an uncovered truck when it (start) \_\_\_\_\_ to rain.
10. The firm (do) \_\_\_\_\_ business when fire inspectors (order) \_\_\_\_\_ management to stop.

## EXERCISE I. 6.

Practice asking and answering questions such as the following. Answer in complete sentences.

1. What did you do last weekend?
2. What was the class doing when the bell rang?
3. What things were you looking for when I saw you in the department store?
4. What were some of the funny, happy, or interesting incidents in your life and approximately when did they occur?
5. What did you see when you were walking through the park yesterday?
6. What were some of the salient events in the news today or yesterday?
7. What were you doing when I called you last night?

## Past Perfect

The *past perfect tense* is used in sentences with two past actions to show that one of the actions was completed before the other action.

aux. *had* + past participle of the verb

Vincent suddenly *realized* that he *had seen* the film.

Use the past perfect tense for the first completed action, and use the past tense for the second completed action.

**NOTE:** In the examples below, notice the use of the following words: *many times, several times, once, twice, ever, already, just, by the time, still, yet.*

1. After Arman *had revised* the essay *twice*, he *handed* it in.
2. The play *had already begun* by the time they *arrived*.
3. The ship *couldn't leave* because the dock workers *hadn't yet loaded* the cargo.
4. He *had just reported* the accident when a policeman *arrived*.
5. Although the lamp *had fallen* on the floor, it *appeared* undamaged.
6. Before America *gained* independence, it *had been* a British colony.

*Preparados arrived*

**NOTE:** The past perfect tense is frequently used with past reporting verbs, that is, verbs that are used to "report" speech and thoughts, such as: *said, told, knew, thought, asked, believed*. Use the past perfect tense when the action had occurred *before* it was reported. (The past tense is used if the action took place at the time it was reported.) (See Section IV for more on reporting verbs.)

7. Roberto *said* that he *had taken* the test twice.
8. She *told* him he *looked* familiar and that she *had* probably *met* him at the pharmacy convention. (*Told* and *looked* took place at the same time.)
9. The nurse *thought* that the patient still *hadn't taken* his medicine.
10. The report *stated* that people *had demonstrated* because they *were* concerned about nuclear weapons. (*Stated* and *were* took place at the same time.)
11. She *told* him that she *had had* the best time that she'd ever *had*.



Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (By the time the floodwaters subsided, the dam collapsed.)

RIGHT: By the time the floodwaters subsided, the dam *had collapsed*.

(wrong): (She had gone to the post office yesterday.)

RIGHT: She *went* to the post office yesterday.

RIGHT: She didn't need to buy stamps. She *had gone* to the post office the day before. (Use past perfect in relation to past tense.)

(wrong): (Since she didn't bring the proper lens for her camera, she wasn't able to photograph the unusual scene.)

RIGHT: Since she *hadn't brought* the proper lens for her camera, she wasn't able to photograph the unusual scene.

NOTE: The past tense is sometimes implied.

By evening (by the time it was evening) Tovah *had finished* the assignment.

NOTE: The words *before* and *after* clearly designate the sequence of events. Consequently, the past tense, instead of the past perfect, is generally used when the two actions or events have taken place in rapid succession.

*After he mailed* his letter, he *bought* some stamps.

Vahik *wiped* the windows *before he started* the car.

*Before the composer started* to write, he *sharpened* several pencils.

### Past Perfect Continuous

The *past perfect continuous tense* is used in sentences with two past actions to emphasize the fact that the first action had been continuous *before* the second action took place.

aux. *had been* + *-ing* form of the verb

*We had been waiting* for the plane an hour *before it landed*.

Compare meanings and tenses in the following continuous forms:

Present perfect continuous: Billy isn't hungry; he *has been snacking* all afternoon. In fact, he's *been snacking* since he got home.

Past continuous: Billy *was snacking* on potato chips and candy when we saw him.

Past perfect continuous: Billy didn't want any dinner. He wasn't hungry because he *had been snacking* on candy and potato chips.

NOTE: Length of time is mentioned or implied with past perfect continuous tense.

- Miss Yeager *had been working* in the institute for three years when she *declared* herself a candidate for political office.
- They *had been talking* on the telephone for several minutes when they *were* suddenly *cut off*.
- He said he *had been looking* for his notebook since ten o'clock.
- Her eyes were red when I saw her. It was apparent that she *had been crying*.
- By the time construction on the annex *began*, the service club *had been raising* funds for seven years.
- The warning light *had been flashing* for quite a while when the explosion *occurred*.



Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Bobby came home with a black eye; he was fighting with a schoolmate.)

RIGHT: Bobby came home with a black eye; he *had been fighting* with a schoolmate.

(wrong): (The men were working for four hours when the noon whistle blew.) Past continuous is *not* used with length of time.

RIGHT: The men *were working* when the noon whistle blew.

RIGHT: The men *had been working for four hours* when the noon whistle blew.

### EXERCISE I. 7.

Complete the following sentences. Use the past perfect and when appropriate, the past perfect continuous form, of the verb in the parentheses.

1. By the time I got to her place, she (go) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Ingemar (compete) \_\_\_\_\_ for a number of years when he won the riding championship.
3. When the experiment failed, Dr. Jones realized that he (mix) \_\_\_\_\_ the chemicals incorrectly.
4. Many people (be) \_\_\_\_\_ out of a job for a long period before the recovery took place.
5. The Civil War (go on) \_\_\_\_\_ for four years when the armistice was declared in 1865.
6. Clara was too tired to join us. She explained that she (clean) \_\_\_\_\_ house all day.

### EXERCISE I. 8.

Underline the correct structure in the following sentences. Look for any existing clues including the tense in other clauses of the sentences.

1. Kim decided not to water the garden because it (has been raining) (was raining) (had been raining) all night.
2. Since the company went out of business, Gerard (hasn't been working) (wasn't working) (hadn't been working).
3. John thinks that he (has lost) (lost) (had lost) his history book last Tuesday when he (stops) (stopped) (had been stopping) at the gymnasium on his way home.
4. The account was higher than expected because it (had been accruing) (was accruing) (has been accrued) interest for some time.
5. Abraham Lincoln was assassinated as he (was watched) (had been watching) (was watching) a play.
6. A federal grand jury began an investigation to determine whether anyone (have been violating) (had been violate) (had violated) the law.
7. By the time Cortez arrived in Mexico, the Aztec Indians (were developed) (had developed) (developed) a remarkably advanced technology.

### EXERCISE I. 9.

Practice asking and answering questions such as the following. Answer in complete sentences.

1. Had the class already begun when you walked in this morning?
2. Were you disappointed that you hadn't received a better grade?
3. How long had you been living there when you moved?
4. How long had you been studying when your roommate returned?
5. Did you explain why you hadn't written earlier?
6. Had the job market improved by the time you graduated high school?



## Past Time Form of Modals

*Past Modal*

*modal + have + past participle of the verb*

Yuri *should have paid* his rent yesterday but he forgot.

*Past Continuous Modal*

*modal + have + been + -ing form of the verb*

The man *may have been telling* the truth but the police weren't sure.

**Below are examples of the use of modals and common expressions in the past. The headings classify the modals and expressions according to their general meaning.**

*Past Intentions:*

Actions that had been thought of or planned but that were *not* accomplished

1. The salesman *would have sold* his products but he was late for his appointment.
2. They *were going to go* to the ball game last Saturday but it rained.
3. The company *was going to manufacture* computers but it was unable to raise the necessary capital.
4. They *would have been* here yesterday but they were delayed by the weather.
5. She *was supposed to leave* for New York last night but she put off the trip until next week.
6. Joshua *had been intending to study* medicine but he decided to enter law school.
7. He *had planned to take* a vacation but he bought a car instead.

*Past Actions Not Intended:*

Actions that occurred unexpectedly or after a sudden change of plans

1. The guest *wouldn't have stayed* for dinner but the host insisted.
2. Adriana *wasn't going to take* the art class but her friend persuaded her to.
3. Yan *hadn't intended to stay* late but he became interested in the subject everyone was talking about.
4. She *hadn't planned to attend* the conference but she changed her mind.
5. They *weren't supposed to enter* the building by the back door; however, the front door was locked.

*Regrettable Past Actions:*

Actions accomplished or not accomplished, but later regretted

1. I *should have studied* additional languages when I attended college.
2. The judge *shouldn't have ordered* the release of the prisoner.
3. When he heard the noise, the mechanic *should have suspected* a faulty transmission.
4. The contractor *should have been supervising* his men as they worked.
5. They *ought to have called* the fire department as soon as they saw the smoke. They *ought not to have waited*. OR: They *shouldn't have waited*.
6. When they saw the crowd, they *regretted* that they hadn't made a reservation.
7. The witness said that she *was sorry* that she had given false testimony.

*Past Modals Expressing Probability, Possibility, and Opportunity*

1. I can't find my pen. I *must have left* it on my desk. (probability)



2. The driver *may have taken* an alternate route. (possibility)
3. We *could have seen* the eclipse last night but we went to bed early. (opportunity)
4. Sue didn't call back. She *may not have known* my number. (possibly not)
5. It's too bad that Polly wasn't here last night; she *could have met* the guest speaker. (opportunity)
6. Russ slept until noon. He *must have been working* late last night. (probability)
7. He *might have chosen* another career but, at the time, he didn't have enough money to attend graduate school. (possibility)
8. Girgis has just left. Perhaps you can catch him; he *couldn't have gone* far. (probably not)

#### Past Modals Expressing Inability

1. He *couldn't have done* the job without the assistance of others.
2. Without a mortgage, the couple *wouldn't have been able* to purchase the house.

#### Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (There was no estimate on the form. The assessor *may have forget* to include it.)

RIGHT: There was no estimate on the form. The assessor *may have forgotten* to include it.

(wrong): (Akbar *would help* you yesterday but he had to work.)

RIGHT: Akbar *would have helped* you yesterday but he had to work.

(wrong): (They *would be* ready on time last night but their car wouldn't start.)

RIGHT: They *would have been* ready on time last night but their car wouldn't start.

(wrong): (She *must of been* embarrassed when she didn't recognize him.)

RIGHT: She *must have been* embarrassed when she didn't recognize him.

#### Below is a synopsis of past time forms:

(Completed action unassociated with specific time:)

(Adrian *has broken* his glasses.)

Completed action at a specific time, stated or implied:

Adrian *broke* his glasses this morning.

Action in process when second action occurred:

Adrian *broke* his glasses while he *was fixing* his car.

Action completed before the second action:

Adrian *wasn't able* to see well because he *had broken* his glasses.

Action in process before second action occurred:

Adrian *had been repairing* his car for an hour when he broke his glasses.

Action showing past intention:

Adrian *was going to change* the oil but he didn't.

Action showing past regret:

Adrian said that he *shouldn't have broken* his glasses.

Repetitive action of the past:

Adrian *used to be* a mechanic but now he's an electronic technician.

Whenever Adrian had time, he *would fix* his friends' cars.

*used to*

### EXERCISE I. 10.

Write logical responses for each question or statement as in number 1. Use the correct past form of the modal or expression in parentheses. Add *but* clauses when it is logical to do so.

1. Did you go to the meeting last night? (I would go)



*I would have gone to the meeting but I had to study.*

2. Did you do your homework? (I should do)
3. Where did you leave your book? (I must leave)
4. I thought Bob had planned to sing in the chorus last night. (He "be" going to)
5. Why didn't your roommate answer the phone? (He may sleep) *may have been sleep*
6. Were you able to go to the rock concert last week? (I could go)
7. I was surprised to learn that you had watched the horror film. (I "be" going to, not)
8. Did Sue return the books yesterday? (She would return)
9. Did the policeman give Sami a speeding ticket? (Yes. He should drive, not)
10. When the lion roared, the child started to cry. (The child must be)

### EXERCISE I. 11.

Practice asking and answering questions such as the following. Answer in complete sentences.

1. What were you going to do when you got home yesterday?
2. Do you think you should have told her about the situation?
3. Couldn't he have bought a car instead of a motorcycle?
4. Why do you think you should have apologized?
5. Do you think she may not have understood you?
6. What makes you think he must have heard the bad news?
7. Why weren't you supposed to go out last night?

### MIXED EXERCISE 2: PART A

Fill in the circled letter that represents the *correct* form. Be able to give the reason for your selection.

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ you a ride this morning but the car was full. (A B C D)
 

A. will give	C. would have given
B. would give	D. would be giving
2. By the time they entered the concert hall, the musicians \_\_\_\_\_ the introduction to the opera. (A B C D)
 

A. was playing	C. played
B. had played	D. have played
3. The baker ran out of sugar while he \_\_\_\_\_. (A B C D)
 

A. had been baking	C. baked
B. was baking	D. had baked
4. In spite of the fact that Johanna has many personal problems, she \_\_\_\_\_ present every day since the first day of class. (A B C D)
 

A. has been	C. is
B. had been	D. was
5. Can you tell me when she \_\_\_\_\_? (A B C D)
 

A. has moved	C. moved
B. had moved	D. was moving
6. The jury is still out. The members \_\_\_\_\_ the case. (A B C D)
 

A. must still be discussing	C. could still discuss
B. must be discuss	D. maybe discussing



7. Esperanza hasn't been able to attend the last few nights. She \_\_\_\_\_ do some work for her father. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. must C. had had to  
 B. must to D. has had to
8. Whenever the safety commission \_\_\_\_\_ its regulations, there are complaints. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. is enforcing C. enforce  
 B. enforces D. enforced
9. When he decorated the cake, he \_\_\_\_\_ roses around each candle. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. puts C. has put  
 B. had put D. put
10. They \_\_\_\_\_ for seven hours when they spotted a sign that said "Guests." (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. were driving C. had been driving  
 B. drove D. had drove

### MIXED EXERCISE 2: PART B

Fill in the circled letter that represents the *incorrect* form. Be able to explain why the word or phrase you have chosen is not acceptable and how you can correct it.

1. Paul shouldn't to be talking at the same time that the teacher is giving instructions to the class. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A B C D
2. Over the past years, Marco had had the opportunity to travel to many remote areas of the earth. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A B C D
3. While his wife is away, Mr. Quinn is trying to be both mother and father to his children, but he admits, he don't always succeed. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A B C D
4. Mr. Farraj, a reliable man, would certainly keep his appointment yesterday but his car wouldn't start and he was unable to get a taxi. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A B C D
5. Years ago, when they lived on a farm, they were used to get up at five o'clock every morning. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A B C D
6. It was a bitterly cold day and Fred hadn't barely started the car when one of the tires became flat. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A B C D
7. Dr. Malin is a capable, dedicated doctor and his patients have missed him ever since his death. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A B C D
8. Since three weeks, bankers have been protesting the new law because they feel that it is unfair to depositors. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A B C D



9. It's a good thing that they had been wearing their seat belts when the accident occurred. (A B C D)
10. Gregorio told us that he was in New Zealand on business several times. (A B C D)

## FUTURE TIME FORMS

## Future Tense

The *future tense* is used to express an action that will occur at some time in the future.

Paul *will enter* college next fall.

*Will* and *Be going to* are commonly used in the future tense. Although they have a similar meaning, they are usually used for slightly different functions.

Compare:

- To make an announcement: The Teppermans *will celebrate* their fiftieth anniversary in October.  
I'll *wash* the dishes and Syd *will dry* them.
- To describe a plan: Tom and Stu *are going to play* tennis after school.  
We're *going to have* a picnic Sunday.

*Shall* is used in questions but is seldom used in statements except in formal documents and in some literature and poetry.

Shall I come with you? (Would you like me to come with you?)

Sentences in future time often contain *time clauses*, beginning with such words as *when*, *after*, *before*, *as soon as*, *until*, and *while*. Future time sentences also sometimes contain a conditional clause beginning with *if* or *unless*. Use the *present tense* in time clauses and conditional clauses.

- When he arrives at the airport, his partner *will be* there to meet him.
- We *are going to* play golf on Saturday if it doesn't rain.
- As soon as classes are over, Mandy *is going to board* a train for Kentucky.
- The marketing agent *will consult* the designer before he proceeds.
- Shall I buy you some stamps while I'm at the post office?
- Unless scientists and government leaders find solutions, starvation *will continue* to plague the very poor of the world.

NOTE: Occasionally the present perfect, instead of the present tense, is used in the time or conditional clause in order to emphasize the fact that the action is to be completed.

When Mr. Jones *has finished* (or: *finishes*) the survey, he'll confer with the city planner.

As soon as we *have changed* (or: *change*) into our bathing suits, we're going to go swimming.



Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (If her designs will be acceptable, the fashion house will buy them.)  
 xxxxxxxxxxx

RIGHT: If her designs are acceptable, the fashion house will buy them.

(wrong): (We're going to have choral practice as soon as Nabil and Belen will return.)  
 xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

RIGHT: We're going to have choral practice as soon as Nabil and Belen return (or: have returned.)

The present continuous is sometimes used as a less formal way of expressing coming events. Compare:

The football season will begin next Saturday.

The football season is beginning next Saturday.

He won't be here tomorrow. He's going to drive to Arizona.

He won't be here tomorrow. He's driving to Arizona.

They will arrive on Saturday.

They are arriving on Saturday.

The word would is used in polite forms. Compare:

Will you get me a glass of water?

Would you (would you be willing to) get me a glass of water?

Use would (not will) with like and care.

I would like to see that play.

(wrong): (I will like to see that play.)  
 xxxxxxxxxxx

Would you like to go for a walk?

(wrong): (Will you like to go for a walk?)  
 xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

Would you care to have some coffee?

Also: Would you care for some coffee?

Also: Do you care for some coffee?

(wrong): (Will you care for some coffee?)  
 xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

Don't use like with do for a specific occasion. Like means to enjoy in a general sense.

Would you like some coffee?

(wrong): (Do you like some coffee?)  
 xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

(Do you like coffee or do you usually drink something else?)

Would your roommate like to go to the movie with us?

(wrong): (Does your roommate like to go to a movie with us?)  
 xxxxxx

## Modals in Future Time

**Modals and other expressions are used to project future time.** The following headings classify their use. Reminder! Use present tense in time and conditional clauses.



## Necessity

1. The students *must* take a placement test after they register (or: have registered) next week.
2. Mr. Moretti *has to* go to Washington on a business trip unless his associate volunteers to go.
3. Before the two women expand their business, they *need to* calculate their increased overhead.
4. Mr. Techapanichgul *is required to* renew his driver's license if he wants to continue to drive.

## No Necessity

1. They *don't have to* report for duty until next month.
2. We *don't need to* make a reservation before we go to the show.
3. Paul *isn't required to* repeat the class if he makes up the final test.

## Recommendation or Expectation

1. She *should* be here soon.
2. Consumers *should* demand products of good quality.
3. He *had better* read the instructions before he proceeds.
4. If Paula wants to be certified, she *had better not* fail the examination tomorrow.
5. Wilson *shouldn't* notify them until he confirms the news.
6. The weather bureau *is supposed to* issue both short- and long-range predictions.
7. We *are not supposed to* use Room 2 until the paint dries.
8. She *ought to know* basic grammar before she takes Mr. Renfrew's writing class.
9. He *ought not to* (shouldn't) apply unless he is qualified.

## Permission

1. Lim, who has advanced rapidly, *may* take an advanced class if she wishes. (or: is permitted to take an advanced class if she wishes.)
2. If we're quiet, we *can* watch the rehearsal tonight. (or: are allowed to watch the rehearsal tonight.)

## No Permission

1. The Robinsons told their children that, in the future, they *must not* swim in areas that have no lifeguard. (or: are forbidden to swim in areas that have no lifeguard.)
2. Uka *may not* take the reference book home unless she gets permission. (or: is not permitted to take the reference book home unless she gets permission.)
3. Mr. Palmeretti says that Luigi *can't* use the car until he washes it. (or: is not permitted to use the car until he washes it.)

## Possibility

1. Mr. Paillard *may* move to the United States if he obtains a good position.
2. If the weather doesn't clear up, we *might not* (may not) go out.

## Ability

1. Dr. Wang *can* see you today if he has no emergencies.
2. When the noise ceases, the musicians *will be able to* resume playing.

The following sentences contain some additional expressions used to project future plans. Remember that present tense is used in time and conditional clauses. Note that in some cases either the present tense or the present continuous may be used.

1. Jory *expects/is expecting* to take a trip to Alaska when school is out.
2. They *plan/are planning to* purchase a video game if they find one that they like.
3. I *hope/am hoping* to see them when they come to California.
4. Sarah *intends/is intending* to enter the Olympics if she qualifies.

would rather  
 ↓  
 past perfect → past  
 ↓  
 past → present



5. She *would like to* (or *wants to*) travel when she has the time and the money.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): Mr. Bernardi can give you the information as soon as he will get the new schedule.)

RIGHT: Mr. Bernardi can give you the information as soon as he *gets* (or: *has gotten*) the new schedule.

(wrong): (When he comes next week, she will hope to see him.)

RIGHT: When he comes next week, she *hopes/is hoping* to see him.

(wrong): (He has better to come soon or else the dinner will get cold.)

RIGHT: He *had better* come soon or else the dinner will get cold.

(wrong): (When will I come to see you?) Wrong, if meaning is as below.

RIGHT: When would you like me to come to see you?

RIGHT: When shall I come to see you?

RIGHT: When should I come to see you?

**NOTE:** The present tense of *be* plus an infinitive is sometimes used to emphasize duty or obligation. Compare:

Betty will report for duty next week.

Betty *is to report* for duty next week.

You have to be on time for your appointment.

You *are to be* on time for your appointment.

John must appear in court on March 2.

John *is to appear* in court on March 2.

### EXERCISE I. 12.

Give complete answers to the following questions using the same future form as in the question. Add time and conditional clauses using: *if*, *when*, *unless*, *before*, *as soon as*, *while*, *after*.

- Do you plan to go to the game Friday?  
*Yes, I plan to go to the game unless my boss asks me to work overtime.*
- Can you go with us to the theater?
- Where are you going to travel next summer?
- When will the new department store open?
- What are we supposed to with our books?
- Where would you like to go tonight?
- Is the prime minister arriving tonight?
- When shall I tell you about the course?
- What are you going to do tonight?
- Is the drama department going to present a play?

### EXERCISE I. 13.

Practice asking and answering the following kinds of questions. Add time and conditional clauses. Answer in complete sentences.

- Do you have to write a report?
- Can you go away next weekend?
- Must you leave early?



4. Shouldn't you let them know that you are going to be late?
5. When are you supposed to return?
6. Will you help me?
7. Are you going to work tomorrow?
8. Would you like to go shopping tonight?

### Future Continuous

The *future continuous* is used to describe an action that will be in process at a particular time in the future, often in relation to another action.

aux. *will be* + *-ing* form of the verb

When Mr. Lin returns from his meeting, his wife *will be sleeping*. Compare:

Present continuous: He can't play golf today because he *is working*.

Future continuous: He can't play golf next Sunday because he *will be working*.

---

**NOTE:** Modals other than *will*, as well as other expressions, are also used in future continuous form. Notice present tense in time and conditional clauses in the sentences below.

---

1. According to the schedule, their plane *should be arriving* soon.
2. The Burtons *hope to be sailing* to Canada this time next month.
3. If you go there now, he *will probably be practicing* his cello.
4. Tomorrow at this time, he'll *be flying* to Paris.
5. The Vanderviver brothers *expect to be working* on their grandfather's farm next summer while their parents are in Europe.
6. Although she's not attending this month's class, she *will be attending* next month's class. They *won't be staying* with us when they come; they'll *be staying* at a hotel.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Wait until seven o'clock so that they won't still eat.)

RIGHT: Wait until seven o'clock so that they *won't still be eating*.

(wrong): (If we don't hurry, the musicians will play by the time we arrive.)

RIGHT: If we don't hurry, the musicians *will be playing* by the time we arrive.

### EXERCISE I. 14.

Fill in the blanks with the correct form, present tense or the future continuous tense.

1. Lucho probably (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ television when Ali (get) \_\_\_\_\_ there.
2. When Mrs. Hidalgo (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to school tomorrow, Anna and Keeko (work) \_\_\_\_\_ in the office.
3. We must not disturb him after 2:00 P.M. because he (prepare) \_\_\_\_\_ his income tax form at that time.
4. By the time Earl (drive) \_\_\_\_\_ home from the airport, his friend Bradley (fly) \_\_\_\_\_ to Brazil.
5. What \_\_\_\_\_ you (do) \_\_\_\_\_ while your husband (attend) \_\_\_\_\_ business meetings?
6. Your employer would like to talk to you at four o'clock because he (confer, still, not) \_\_\_\_\_ with his attorneys at that time.







If we don't hurry, they will have gone.  
 If we don't hurry, they will be gone.

Before he leaves town, he will have done the report.  
 Before he leaves on his trip, he will have the report done.  
 Before he leaves on his trip, he will be done with the report.

By the time you need your car, the mechanic will have repaired it.  
 By the time you need your car, the mechanic will have it repaired.

**NOTE:** Use the active future perfect when a passive form can't be used.

(wrong): (By next week, Irina will be seen all the fine cathedrals in Rome.)  
 (wrong): (By next week, Irina will have all the fine cathedrals in Rome seen.)  
 RIGHT: By next week, Irina will have seen all the fine cathedrals in Rome.

Future Perfect Continuous

The *future perfect continuous tense* is used to describe an action in the future which will have been going on up to a certain designated time or in relation to another action.

aux. *will have been* + *-ing* form of the verb.

The next time I see her, she *will have been living* in her new apartment for one month.

**NOTE:** The length of time is often mentioned with future perfect continuous action.

By ten o'clock, I *will have been typing* for three hours.  
 Yervan *will have been doing* homework several hours when his friend comes to pick him up.  
 By the night of the play, the *cast will have been rehearsing* a month.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (By the time the project is finished, Carol and her colleagues will be working on it a full year.)  
 RIGHT: By the time the project is finished, Carol and her colleagues *will have been working* on it a full year.

Below is a synopsis of future time forms:

Action to occur in the future:	Bill <i>is going to write</i> to his friend Ed. Bill <i>will tell</i> his friend about his trip. Bill <i>may write</i> to Lou also if he has time.
Future action in progress:	Bill <i>will be writing</i> to Ed while his wife is at the library.
Action completed by a certain future time:	Bill <i>will probably have written</i> two letters by the time his wife returns.
Continuous future action up to a certain time or event:	Bill <i>will have been writing</i> letters for a few hours when his wife returns.

EXERCISE I. 16.

Fill in the blanks with the future perfect or when correct to do so, the future perfect continuous.

1. When Ken arrives in Arizona, the interior decorator (redecorate) \_\_\_\_\_ his new office.



2. By the end of fall, Joe (replace) \_\_\_\_\_ Bob as chief operating officer.
3. Next Tuesday, Dorothy (be) \_\_\_\_\_ here for a full month.
4. In ten minutes they (talked) \_\_\_\_\_ on the telephone for an hour.
5. When the clock strikes twelve, they (discuss) \_\_\_\_\_ the proposal since 9 a.m.
6. By the time the rainy weather begins, Mr. Erlich and his son Barry hope to (build) \_\_\_\_\_ a new roof on their house.

## EXERCISE I. 17.

Practice asking and answering questions such as the following. Answer in complete sentences.

1. What will you have learned by the time the course is over?
2. How many years will you have been in school when you graduate?
3. What do you expect to have achieved five years from now?
4. By what year will you have completed your education?
5. What are possible ways in which the world may have improved by the end of the century?

## EXERCISE I. 18.

The following words and groups of words are a mixture of "clues" to the various tenses. Complete the sentences using appropriate forms of tenses and modals.

1. Look out!
2. Since this morning,
3. A short time ago,
4. The dog bit the postman while the postman
5. As soon as class begins, ten minutes from now, the instructor
6. Mr. Oliver \_\_\_\_\_ but he was busy.
7. Up to now, Roy
8. Don't call them between 6:00 and 7:00 P.M. because probably they
9. By the end of next week, Henry
10. We're going to go to the show tonight if
11. Her bathing suit was still wet; apparently she
12. Everyone is praising last night's performance. I didn't see it but it \_\_\_\_\_ excellent.
13. By the time we reached the airport, the plane
14. At this time next week my lucky friend expects \_\_\_\_\_ to Hawaii.
15. Patricio \_\_\_\_\_ to the basketball game last night but he was too tired.
16. I'm not sure where he is, but he \_\_\_\_\_ in the laboratory.
17. From 1976 to 1982,
18. While Bu's at football practice later today, Jia Ming
19. They \_\_\_\_\_ the opera "Tosca" many times.
20. Next weekend, we \_\_\_\_\_ after

## MIXED EXERCISE 3: PART A

Fill in the circled letter that represents the *correct* form. Check clues and sentence logic. Be able to give a reason for your selection and to explain why the others are incorrect.

1. Michiko couldn't come to the telephone when Mrs. Sakuda called her because she \_\_\_\_\_ in the laboratory. (A) (B) (C) (D)
- |                     |                |
|---------------------|----------------|
| A. had been working | C. was working |
| B. has been working | D. worked      |



2. For some time, Jack \_\_\_\_\_ his paintings to the Perlson Art Gallery.  
 A. is selling  
 B. has been selling  
 C. has sold  
 D. was sold  
 (A) (B) (C) (D)
3. By this time next week, the winners \_\_\_\_\_ their awards.  
 A. will have receive  
 B. will have received  
 C. will be received  
 D. will have been receiving  
 (A) (B) (C) (D)
4. We walked in the opposite direction as soon as we realized that we \_\_\_\_\_ the wrong path.  
 A. had taken  
 B. were taken  
 C. took  
 D. have taken  
 (A) (B) (C) (D)
5. If they \_\_\_\_\_, everyone can have a chance to speak.  
 A. took turns answering  
 B. would take turns answering  
 C. are take turns answering  
 D. take turns answering  
 (A) (B) (C) (D)
6. Last month I read a book about the ethics of a primitive society. This month \_\_\_\_\_ a recently published historical novel.  
 A. I've reading  
 B. I'd been reading  
 C. I'm reading  
 D. I was reading  
 (A) (B) (C) (D)
7. By next October that couple \_\_\_\_\_ together for 25 years.  
 A. have performed  
 B. will be performing  
 C. will have been performing  
 D. will perform  
 (A) (B) (C) (D)
8. What a lovely night! The moon \_\_\_\_\_ brightly.  
 A. shines  
 B. is shining  
 C. shined  
 D. was shining  
 (A) (B) (C) (D)
9. The deficit \_\_\_\_\_ so large, we will probably have to pay additional taxes.  
 A. is growing  
 B. grows  
 C. has growed  
 D. was growing  
 (A) (B) (C) (D)
10. Charles \_\_\_\_\_ her but he changed his mind.  
 A. would call  
 B. was planned to  
 C. would have call  
 D. was going to call  
 (A) (B) (C) (D)

### MIXED EXERCISE 3: PART B

Fill in the circled letter that represents the *incorrect* form.

1. While Mary was in the library doing research, she was finding a book which contained letters the author had written to a son.  
 A B C D  
 (A) (B) (C) (D)
2. Even though Lucy and Sadie have walked many miles today, they will like to visit the place where Mozart was born.  
 A B C D  
 (A) (B) (C) (D)



3. It's fortunate that he hasn't never forgotten how to speak his native language  
 A B C  
 as he was very young when he left his country. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 D
4. The gallery owner told us that he already returned the works of last month's  
 A B C  
exhibition to the various artists. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 D
5. Last week the court has ruled that the law pertaining to school financing was  
 A B C  
unconstitutional. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 D
6. While the candidate will speak at the public meeting tonight, his campaign man-  
 A B  
ager will arrange the location for his next appearance. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 C D
7. Since seven months the ranchers haven't had any rain and they are worried  
 A B C  
that their cattle won't have sufficient grazing land. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 D
8. Do you think that Ollie should borrow his friend's car last night when he  
 A B  
hadn't asked his friend for permission? (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 C D
9. Once a year the Lombardos, who lives across the street from us, return to Italy  
 A B C D  
for a visit with their parents and relatives. (A) (B) (C) (D)
10. The animals that had been bought for the zoo were so weak from their long  
 A B C  
journey across the ocean that they couldn't scarcely walk. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 D



## Two

# PASSIVE VOICE AND CAUSATIVE PASSIVE VOICE

### THE PASSIVE VOICE

When the subject does the action, as is the case in most sentences, the verb action is in the *active voice*.

Next term the college *will offer* a course in printing.

When the action is done to the subject *by someone* or is caused *by an outside influence*, the verb action is in the *passive voice*. (*Passive* means "not active.")

Next term, a *course* in printing *will be offered* by the university. (Obviously, a course cannot offer; it has to *be offered*.)

All tenses of the *be* auxiliary are used in the passive voice.  
appropriate form of aux. be + past participle of the verb

These vegetables *have been grown* by local farmers.  
She looks happy; she *must have been told* the good news.

(In the first sentence above, "local farmers" are the agents who perform the action. In the second sentence, no agent is mentioned. It isn't necessary to name the agent unless it's important to the meaning of the sentence.)

In the following sentences, the object of the active-voiced sentence becomes the subject of the passive-voiced sentence. Only transitive verbs, that is, verbs followed by a direct object, may be changed to passive voice.

Compare:

A professional photographer took the class pictures. *The class pictures were taken by a professional photographer.*  
The class pictures *were taken* by a professional photographer.

Scientists were monitoring the spacecraft when some of the equipment ceased to function.  
The spacecraft *was being monitored* when some of the equipment ceased to function.

The following passive voice sentences demonstrate various verb forms.



1. Present tense: Miss Nadell *is driven* to work by her friend each day.
2. Present modal: Children *should be taught* good behavior.
3. Present continuous: We can't cool the room because the air-conditioner *is being re-paired*.
4. Present perfect: Pilot layoffs *have been caused* by the substantial reduction of flights.
5. Past tense: Last week some land near the lake *was surveyed* as a possible site for a bird sanctuary.
6. Past modal: Ordinarily the room *would have been cleaned* but the janitor was ill yesterday.
7. Past modal: The criminal *may not have been recognized* because of a disguise.
8. Past continuous: The new drapes *were being hung* when the visitors showed up.
9. Past perfect: The outcome of the election was announced before all of the votes *had been counted*.
10. Future: Many believe that one day the earth *will be destroyed* if people do not learn to live in peace.
11. Future modal: The teacher said the report *must be done* by Monday.
12. Future modal: Mr. Donat feels that he *should be given* a raise in pay.
13. Future expression: I *expect to be told* about the new publication soon.
14. Future perfect: The cable that Mrs. Rabin has sent *will have been received* by the time she boards the plane.

**EXCEPTION:** The passive infinitive, instead of the future passive, is sometimes used to make an announcement or to stress an obligation.

present tense of *be* + *to be* + past participle

Compare:

Amelia will be awarded a full scholarship.  
Amelia *is to be awarded* a full scholarship.

The instructions must be followed precisely.  
The instructions *are to be followed* precisely.

*Avoid the following kinds of errors:*

- (wrong): (The test which the students took yesterday had prepared by the Educational Testing Service.)
- RIGHT: The test which the students took yesterday *had been prepared* by the Educational Testing Service.
- (wrong): (We can't make toast this morning because the toaster is repairing.)
- RIGHT: We can't make toast this morning because the toaster *is being repaired*.
- (wrong): (The water should be tested before people were permitted to drink it.)
- RIGHT: The water *should have been tested* before people were permitted to drink it.
- (wrong): (Thomas Jefferson, who considered to be one of the greatest American patriots, wrote the Declaration of Independence.)
- RIGHT: Thomas Jefferson, who *was considered* to be one of the greatest patriots, wrote the Declaration of Independence.
- (wrong): (Corn used to make tortillas.)
- RIGHT: (Corn *is used to make* tortillas.)
- (wrong): (The building hopes to be finished by next month.)



---

NOTE: Only a person can hope, expect, plan, and intend.

---

RIGHT: The contractor *hopes* that the building will be finished next month.

---

NOTE: Don't use the passive voice when the subject does the action.

---

(wrong): (The graph was shown that there had been an increase in sales.)  
 xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

RIGHT: The graph *showed* that there had been an increase in sales.

(wrong): (Stella is agreed with Antony that a hearing should be held.)  
 xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

RIGHT: Stella *agrees* with Antony that a hearing should be held.

RIGHT: Stella *is in agreement* with Antony that a hearing should be held.

(wrong): (Suddenly the book was fallen from the shelf.)  
 xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

RIGHT: Suddenly the book *fell* from the shelf.

### EXERCISE II. 1.

Change the following sentences to the passive voice, as demonstrated in number 1, with the object becoming the subject. The verb in the passive voice must be in the same tense as that in the active voice. Remember, the subject and verb must agree. (Don't add the agent or "by phrase" unless you think it is important.)

1. One of the senators made a stirring speech on the floor of the Senate yesterday.  
*A stirring speech was made on the floor of the Senate yesterday.*
2. The mayor of the city has just welcomed the foreign heads of state.
3. Yesterday the postman didn't deliver the mail until 5:00 P.M.
4. The publisher will publish the new textbook next May.
5. A cement mixer is causing the noise.
6. By dawn tomorrow the firefighters will have extinguished the forest fire.
7. Teachers need the cooperation of students in order to have a successful program.
8. As soon as the ambulance arrived, the attendants drove the wounded man to the hospital.
9. They can't install the washing machine until the tenant moves in.
10. A demolition team was tearing down an old building as we drove by.

### EXERCISE II. 2.

Practice asking and answering questions such as the following. Answer in complete sentences.

1. What subjects are you being taught this term?
2. Have your classes been scheduled for days or for evenings?
3. Are the papers usually corrected by the instructor himself?
4. Do most of your compositions have to be rewritten?
5. Why must the essays be typed?
6. Were some of the students transferred to other rooms?
7. When will your car be repaired?
8. Why was the game cancelled yesterday?



## THE CAUSATIVE PASSIVE VOICE

When a sentence is in the passive voice, we have learned that something has been done to the subject. When a sentence is in the causative passive, something has been done to the *object*. Verbs *have* or *get* are used in causative passive form to indicate that the subject asked someone to do something to a particular object.

Use a form of *have* or *get* + *object* + *past participle*

Sometimes the subject itself is responsible for the causative passive action (7, 11).

1. The Dean will have the welcoming speech given by a student.
2. Yakov was getting his shoes shined when he witnessed an accident.
3. After a year of toothaches, Warren had one of his teeth pulled.
4. Sydney had just had his suit dry-cleaned when a passing car sprayed mud all over him.
5. The editor plans to have the material divided into three sessions.
6. If you don't want to have an accident, you had better have your brakes fixed.
7. By two o'clock the secretary will have all of the reports typed.
8. By the next time I see Leonid, he will have had his appendix removed.
9. When the articles are compiled, she's going to have them sent to me.
10. Jimmy has his teeth checked twice a year. (by a dentist)
11. Corky got his composition finished by eight o'clock.

**NOTE:** Sometimes the causative passive action has not been initiated by the subject and, in fact, may take place without the subject's approval.

12. That woman will have her child taken away from her if she doesn't take proper care of him.
13. Two of the men might get their licenses revoked by the court.
14. How did the dog get its foot caught in the trap?

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (He must have the book report wrote by next week.)

RIGHT: He must have the book report written by next week.

(wrong): (The owner is going to have installed a shower when he builds the house.)

RIGHT: The owner is going to have a shower installed when he builds the house.

(wrong): (The reception room looked different. The doctor must have the room redecorate.)

RIGHT: The reception room looked different. The doctor must have had the room redecorated.

## EXERCISE II. 3.

Using the correct form of *have* or *get*, complete each sentence with a causative passive form. The first sentence is done for you.

1. Next month we are going to have a chestnut tree planted in the garden.
2. Right now, Jane \_\_\_\_\_ her hair \_\_\_\_\_.
3. She was going to \_\_\_\_\_ a coat \_\_\_\_\_ by a tailor but she couldn't afford it.
4. Unfortunately, Mrs. Larsen \_\_\_\_\_ just \_\_\_\_\_ her purse \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Twenty years from now, they \_\_\_\_\_ their mortgage \_\_\_\_\_.







8. She complains that she \_\_\_\_\_ headaches. (A B C D)  
 A. has frequently C. frequently has  
 B. has had frequently D. have frequent
9. New officers \_\_\_\_\_ by our club when we hold our next meeting. (A B C D)  
 A. elected C. expect to elect  
 B. will elect D. will be elected
10. Brigitte thinks her dress is a little too long, so she plans to get it \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. shortened C. shorten (A B C D)  
 B. be shortened D. to have shortened

## MIXED EXERCISE 4: PART B

Fill in the circled letter that represents the *incorrect* form. Be able to explain why the word or phrase you have chosen is not acceptable and how you can correct it.

1. On the days that he's not busy, he liked to write poetry, or paint with watercol-  
 A B C D  
ors, or cook an unusual dish. (A B C D)
2. My brakes had not been tested yet when I came to pick up my car; in fact, the  
 A B C D  
brakes were testing as I walked into the service station. (A B C D)
3. When we next see Alice and Max, who are presently parents of two children,  
 A B C D  
they will had had a new baby in their family. (A B C D)
4. As an editor, Ms. Zeitland must do a voluminous amount of reading, but she  
 A B C D  
 says that the fact that she has to read a great deal doesn't bother her because  
 she used to it. (A B C D)
5. The music for the opera, which will perform next month, has been written by  
 A B C D  
one of the students in the music department. (A B C D)
6. Pedro must not be very adventurous. He claims that he never ate Chinese food,  
 A B C D  
 Japanese food, or German food. (A B C D)
7. When the dealer sold the appliance to the customer, he should give him an  
 A B C D  
instruction book to be sure the appliance would be operated properly. (A B C D)
8. We can begin the meeting when Josephina brings the report that she has pre-  
 A B C D  
pared last week. (A B C D)







# Three

## FORMATION OF QUESTIONS, TAG ENDINGS, AND NEGATIVE QUESTIONS

### FORMATION OF QUESTIONS

#### Present and Past Tense With Yes/No Questions

present aux. *do, does*

past aux. *did*

Statement: Jorge plays bridge.

Jorge played bridge last night.

Does Jorge play bridge?

Did Jorge play bridge last night?

Do you/we/they play bridge?

Did you/we/they play bridge last night?

present

past

Statement: Emily is busy.

Emily was busy yesterday.

Is Emily busy?

Was Emily busy yesterday?

Am I busy?

Was I busy yesterday?

Are you/we/they busy?

Were you/we/they busy yesterday?

#### Question Formation of Other Tenses

Use the same auxiliary in the question as in the statement.

Statement: He should ask for an appointment.

Should he ask for an appointment?

When there is more than one auxiliary, place *only the first auxiliary* before the subject.

Statement: He should have asked for an appointment last week.

Should he have asked for an appointment last week?

(wrong): (Should have he asked for an appointment last week?)  
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

#### Information Question Words: *Who, Whom, Whose, Where, When, Why, Which, How, What*

When using information question words, *maintain the basic question order.*

Will Luke be five in July?

When will Luke be five?

In what month will Luke be five?

On what date will Luke be five?

How old will Luke be in July?

(wrong): (How old Luke will be in July?)  
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx



**Using Who, Whom, Whose**

*Who* is used as a subject.

Who saw him?

(wrong): (Who did see him?)  
xxxx

*Whom* is used as the object of a verb.

Whom did he see? (The word *he* is the subject: He saw whom.)

Conversational: (Who did he see?)

*Whom* is also used as the object of a preposition.

With whom did he speak? (or:) Whom did he speak with?

(wrong): (With who did he speak?) Use *whom*, in both formal English and conversation when preceded by a preposition.  
xxxxxx

Conversational: Who did he speak with? (*Who* may be used in conversation, but not in formal English, when the preposition is at the end of the sentence or the clause.)

*Whose* refers to possession.

Whose birthday did you celebrate?

Whose book are you reading?

**Using Prepositions with Question Words**

When a preposition occurs in a statement or in a response, the question must also contain the preposition.

Compare:

*In whose home* was the party held?

or: Whose home was the party held in? (less formal)

The party was held *in* Jory's home.

*From which college* did she graduate?

or: Which college did she graduate from?

She graduated *from* Britt College.

*To what subject* was he attracted?

or: What subject was he attracted to?

He was attracted *to* the subject of politics.

(wrong): (Whose home was the party held?)  
xx

(wrong): (Which college did she graduate?)  
xx

(wrong): (What subject was he attracted?)  
xx

**EXERCISE III. 1.**

Change the following statements to questions, as demonstrated in number 1.

1. By the time classes begin, he will have completed the required reading.  
Will he have completed the required reading by the time classes begin?
2. The concert was attended by the majority of the student body.
3. She has decided to take a course in shorthand before she applies for a job.
4. If they finish their work early, they're going to go for a long walk.
5. When the candidate gave his speech, he was being careful not to offend any political group.

**EXERCISE III. 2.**

Make up questions with the words indicated in the parentheses, as demonstrated in number 1. (Use the same verb tense as that in the statement.)

1. Stuart saw a bullfight in Mexico? (What?) (Where?)



*What did Stuart see in Mexico?*

*Where did Stuart see a bullfight?*

2. Katsumi has won this year's debating contest. (Who?) (What kind of contest?)
3. Zobi's cat was found yesterday by Jack, a next-door neighbor. (Whose?) (Who?)
4. Karen should have lent her bicycle to George so that he wouldn't have been late. (Why?) (To whom?)
5. Mr. and Mrs. Perry will be staying at the Logan Hotel all next week. (At which hotel?) (How long?)

## TAG ENDINGS

Tag endings are used in both questions and statements in order to avoid repetition.

Compare:

Kate works full time. Doesn't she work full time?

Kate works full time, *doesn't she?*

John can play the piano and Mary can play the piano also.

John can play the piano and *so can Mary.*

The tense in the tag ending must agree with the tense in the preceding clause.

Those flowers *are* fragrant, *aren't* they?

He *played* tennis yesterday but she *didn't*.

Use the same auxiliaries in the tag ending as are in the preceding clause, but change them to negative or positive when necessary.

Myra *should have* come on time and Damian *should have* too.

Bea *can* play the flute but Celia *can't*.

Notice, in each section below, whether the tag ending is positive or negative. Compare the tag ending verb structure with the verb structure in the preceding clause.

### Tag Endings with "Be"

#### *Endings with Yes/No Questions*

He is busy, isn't he? They were busy last period, weren't they?

She isn't busy, is she? They weren't busy last period, were they?

#### *Tag Endings of Agreement*

He was absent yesterday and so was she.

He was absent yesterday and she was too.

#### *Tag Endings of a Contrary Position*

The classrooms aren't open but the library is.

The library is open but the classrooms aren't.

#### *Tag Endings of Agreement with "Either" and "Neither"*

Her sons weren't home but her daughter was.



Her daughter was home but her sons weren't.

Tag Endings with Present and Past Tense Action Verbs

Tag Endings with Yes/No Questions

He speaks French, doesn't he?  
 She doesn't speak French, does she?

Tag Endings of Agreement

Dean went to Oklahoma last year and so did Debby.  
 Dean went to Oklahoma last year and Debby did too.

Tag Endings of a Contrary Position

The apple tree produced fruit but the peach tree didn't.  
 The peach tree didn't produce fruit but the apple tree did.

Tag Endings of Agreement with "Either" and "Neither"

The food didn't contain any sugar and neither did the beverage.  
 The food didn't contain any sugar and the beverage didn't either.

Tag Endings with Other Auxiliaries

Tag Endings with Yes/No Questions

I have met you before, haven't I?  
 He hasn't met you before, has he?

Tag Endings of Agreement

He may come tonight and she may too.  
 He may come tonight and so may she.

Tag Endings of a Contrary Position

The piano will be moved but the stereo set won't be.  
 The stereo set won't be moved but the piano will be.

Tag Endings of Agreement with "Either" and "Neither"

He shouldn't have disturbed them and neither should she have.  
 He shouldn't have disturbed them and she shouldn't have either.

---

NOTE: Only one auxiliary is used before the subject in the tag ending.

(wrong): (They could have come last week, ~~couldn't have they?~~)

RIGHT: They could have come last week, *couldn't they have?*

NOTE: When you are in agreement with a negative remark, respond with *no, not yes*.

(wrong): ("He doesn't speak English, does he?") ("Yes, he doesn't.")

RIGHT: "He doesn't speak English, does he?" "No, he doesn't."

RIGHT: "The Senate hasn't approved the measure." "No, it hasn't."

---

Special Tag Endings

I'm being silly, *am I not?* (*Aren't I* is commonly used in conversation.)



Let's go to the show, *shall we?* (*Let's* proposes a plan for "you and me.")

Sondra ought to buy a dictionary, *shouldn't she?*

The earth revolves around the sun, *as do other planets.* (See Literary Variations in Section VIII.)

## NEGATIVE QUESTIONS

Negative questions are asked to obtain confirmation. They are similar to yes/no questions with tag endings. Contractions are used in negative questions. Like tag endings, negative questions are sometimes used simply to pursue conversation. Compare the first two questions below.

She's the woman whom you met last night, *isn't she?*

*In't she* the woman whom you met last night?

*Aren't* those flowers lovely?

*Haven't they* moved to Alabama yet?

*Won't he* be at the dance tonight?

*Hadn't he* had any experience when he started his job?

*Weren't you* photographing the birds when I walked by?

### EXERCISE III. 3.

Practice asking and answering questions such as the following.

1. You're a new student, aren't you?
2. You haven't been here very long, have you?
3. He plays the trumpet very well, doesn't he?
4. These photographs were taken on the campus, weren't they?
5. Didn't your friend call you yesterday?
6. Isn't he attending school this term?
7. Haven't we met before?

### EXERCISE III. 4.

Complete the following with a tag question.

1. The wind blew some of the trees down last night, \_\_\_\_\_?
2. James hasn't told you about the assignment yet, \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Ruth and Jordan dislike big parties, \_\_\_\_\_?
4. She'll be taking a music lesson tonight, \_\_\_\_\_?
5. These shirts were made in Korea, \_\_\_\_\_?

### EXERCISE III. 5.

Fill in the blanks with a subject, and add a tag ending as designated in the parentheses.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ likes to write poetry and \_\_\_\_\_ (so)
2. \_\_\_\_\_ weren't able to finish the text and \_\_\_\_\_ (either)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ is still sleeping \_\_\_\_\_ (but)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ won't be shown until next week and \_\_\_\_\_ (neither)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ voted against the proposal and \_\_\_\_\_ (too)



## MIXED EXERCISE 5: PART A

Fill in the circled letter that represents the *correct* form. Be able to give a reason for your selection.

1. Mr. Caulfield went to bed as soon as he got home. He \_\_\_\_\_ for ten straight hours. (A) (B) (C) (D)
 

A. had been working	C. worked
B. was working	D. had been worked
  
2. If the alarm doesn't work on your clock, why don't you \_\_\_\_\_? (A) (B) (C) (D)
 

A. have repaired it	C. to repair it
B. repaired it	D. have it repaired
  
3. Howard \_\_\_\_\_ to speak with them but they appeared to be in a hurry. (A) (B) (C) (D)
 

A. would stop	C. would have stopped
B. would of stopped	D. will stop
  
4. By the end of this month she expects to \_\_\_\_\_ six chapters. (A) (B) (C) (D)
 

A. be written	C. have wrote
B. have written	D. have been written
  
5. When \_\_\_\_\_? (A) (B) (C) (D)
 

A. will be the package delivered	C. will the package deliver
B. will the package be deliver	D. will the package be delivered
  
6. The couple are looking for an apartment, \_\_\_\_\_? (A) (B) (C) (D)
 

A. don't they	C. didn't they
B. aren't they	D. are they
  
7. \_\_\_\_\_ did you buy the gift? (A) (B) (C) (D)
 

A. For whom	C. For who
B. Who	D. Whom for
  
8. \_\_\_\_\_ just before the entertainment was presented? (A) (B) (C) (D)
 

A. Why they left	C. Why did they leave
B. Why they did leave	D. Why they had left
  
9. The moment he mailed the letter, he was sorry that he \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)
 

A. wrote it	C. had been writing it
B. had written it	D. was writing it
  
10. The customer complained that the lamps had not been delivered yet, \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)
 

A. and neither the chairs had been	C. and the chairs weren't either
B. and the chairs too	D. and neither had the chairs



**MIXED EXERCISE 5: PART B**

Fill in the circled letter that represents the *incorrect* form. Be able to correct it.

1. If the storms continue, the sand on the beaches maybe completely eroded.  
A B C D  
(A) (B) (C) (D)
  
2. Wei Yee and Lien were going to stay home from school today because they had gone to bed late, but Wei Yee didn't want to miss the test and neither didn't Lien.  
A B C D  
(A) (B) (C) (D)
  
3. Malcolm had lost the archery championship on three different occasions, but in the event which was held last week, he could win the trophy at last.  
A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
  
4. There was a brightly decorated package in the office but no one seemed to know to whom it belong.  
A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
  
5. When construction was about to begin on the site near the woods, some of the beautiful trees had to cut down.  
A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
  
6. Since room 7 is too small to accommodate everyone, the class is meet in Room 12 for the time being, and later it will meet in Room 14.  
A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
  
7. Why has been the annual meeting of stockholders postponed when most people have already made plans to attend?  
A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
  
8. Haven't Henry and Simon decide not to give up their jobs until they get new ones?  
A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
  
9. Just as I was about to mail my letters, the mail was loading onto the mail trucks.  
A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
  
10. Aaron is going to remain at the warehouse until he will be notified that his services are no longer needed.  
A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)



## Four

# INDIRECT SPEECH

Myron *said* that he would attend the meeting.  
He *realized* that everyone was expecting him.

*Direct speech* is used to express ideas and thoughts directly to the other person or persons.  
*Indirect speech* is used to report what someone has said or thought. Compare the following sentences:

Direct speech: He said, "I'm very happy to see you."

Indirect speech: He said that he was very happy to see me.

## REPORTING VERBS

The most common "reporting verbs" in indirect speech are *say*, *tell*, and *ask*. Other reporting verbs are *explain*, *state*, *declare*, *remark*, *mention*, *inform*, *report*, *announce*, *respond*, *reply*, *promise*, *indicate*, *point out*, *worry*, *admit*, *complain*, *confess*, *claim*, *remind*, *notify*. "Thought" reporting verbs are: *think*, *notice*, *know*, *believe*, *wonder*, *demonstrate*, *recall*, *remember*, *forget*, *show*, *realize*.

A *reporting verb* is usually followed by a *noun clause*. A noun clause contains a subject and a verb and, like a noun, it is used as a subject or an object. Noun clauses often begin with *that*. The word *that* can be stated or implied.

Mr. Njorge *mentioned that* he had been educated in England.

Mr. Njorge *mentioned* he had been educated in England.

Most reporting verbs may not be followed directly by a personal noun or a pronoun before the noun clause.

Mrs. Marsh explained (or: *explained to Roger*) that she needed a computer.

(wrong): (Mrs. Marsh explained Roger that she needed a computer.)  
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

The exceptions to the above rule are *tell*, *ask*, *inform*, *notify*, *show*, *remind*, *promise*.

She *showed the teacher* that she had understood the problem.

He *told us* that he had seven sisters and one brother.



## SEQUENCE OF TENSES

Sometimes reporting verbs are in the present tense, but those that report what someone has said are usually in the past tense. Compare:

He *tells* me that he *is* in the Intermediate Level.

He *told* me that he *was* in the Intermediate Level.

In formal English, the verb in the noun clause that follows a past tense reporting verb must be in a past time form.

Aristotle *said* that Denise *was* in her class. (at the present time)

Aristotle *said* that Denise *had been* in her class. (at an earlier time)

In less formal, popular usage today, the verb in the noun clause is often in a present time form if the fact or the event is still true. Popular usage is usually used in newspapers, periodicals, and the like. Compare:

Formal: The artist *said* that he usually *used* watercolors.

Informal: The artist *said* that he usually *uses* watercolors.

Formal: Ruth *said* that she *was* busy and she *couldn't* go out tonight.

Informal: Ruth *said* that she *is* busy and she *can't* go out tonight.

Formal: A bank official *reported* that the escrow *hadn't been* completed yet.

Informal: A bank official *reported* that the escrow *hasn't been* completed yet.

Formal: A federal judge *declared* last week that the railroad between the two cities *had to* resume service next month.

Informal: A federal judge *declared* last week that the railroad between the two cities *has to* resume service next month.

In the list below, formal changes from direct speech to indirect speech are described. Study the differences in punctuation, pronouns, and tenses.

- "Yervan swims every day."  
Yervan remarked that he *swam* every day.
- "Sarkis is working on his research paper."  
Sarkis informed us that he *was working* on his research paper.
- "Jill Markham has received a scholarship."  
Mrs. Markham wanted us to know that Jill *had received* a scholarship.
- "Bea has been practicing the flute since noon."  
Mark replied that Bea *had been practicing* the flute since noon.
- "Janet visited her friend Lynn last month."  
Janet declared that she *had visited* her friend Lynn last month.
- "The men were fishing when their boat capsized."  
She observed that the men *had been fishing* when their boat capsized.
- "She's going to leave at 8:00 P.M."  
He reminded them that Sue *was going to leave* at 8:00 P.M.
- "The Rooneys are planning to travel before they return to Ireland."  
The Rooneys' friends knew that the Rooneys *were planning to travel* before they *returned* to Ireland.
- "He can speak to you tomorrow."  
Your counselor stated that he *could speak* to you tomorrow.



10. "Cindy may help you."  
Margaret indicated that Cindy *might help* us.
11. "Richard will conduct the chorus."  
Brian thought that Richard *would conduct* the chorus.
12. "An expert has to assess the value."  
The young woman explained that an expert *had to assess* the value.

---

**NOTE:** *Must, should, ought to, and had better* remain the same.

---

13. "Ted should assist Bob."  
Betty pointed out that Ted should assist Bob.

## OTHER INDIRECT SPEECH FORMS

**Orders and requests are followed by infinitives.**

1. The sergeant commanded, "Fire!"  
The sergeant commanded the soldiers *to fire*.
2. My friend said, "Please call me tonight."  
My friend asked me *to call* her tonight.
3. "Everyone must stop writing," ordered the proctor.  
The proctor ordered everyone *to stop* writing.
4. "Simone, you ought to get more exercise."  
The doctor has advised Simone *to get* more exercise.

**For yes/no responses, use *if, whether, or whether or not* in the noun clause.**

1. "Are you going to the party, Hideaki?" she asked.  
She wondered *if* Hideaki was going to the party.
2. "Have you filled in the application?"  
The clerk asked her *whether* she had filled in the application.  
The clerk asked her *whether or not* she had filled in the application.  
The clerk asked her *whether* she had filled in the application *or not*.

**Noun clauses often begin with information words *who, what, where, when, why, which, and how*. These clauses are in statement form (subject before the verb), *not* in question form.**

1. "Where did Joe store the containers?"  
He told her *where Joe had stored* the containers.
2. "How is he?"  
Mrs. Bates wants to know *how he is*.
3. "Which dress do you prefer?" the saleswoman asked.  
The saleswoman asked me *which dress I preferred*.
4. "What subject is she going to discuss?"  
She explained *what subject she was going to discuss*.
5. "Who was the speaker last night?"  
Talia mentioned *who the speaker had been* last night.



**NOTE:** When direct questions do not begin with informational question words such as *what, where, when, why, and how*, use the informational question word in statement order. Compare:

"What is your name?"  
 "Can you tell me *what your name is*?"

"Why did they leave early?"  
 "Do you know *why they left early*?"

"How many books does Charlie have to buy?"  
 "Would you let me know *how many books Charlie has to buy*?"

*Avoid the following kinds of errors:*

(wrong): (Do you remember who was Henry the VIII's sixth wife?)

RIGHT: Do you remember *who Henry the VIII's sixth wife was*?

(wrong): (He asked her *did she like to dance*?)

RIGHT: He asked her *if she liked to dance*.

RIGHT: He asked her *whether (or: whether or not) she liked to dance*.

(wrong): (She pointed out him that she won't be in class the next day.)

RIGHT: She pointed out (*to him*) that she *wouldn't be* in class the next day.

(wrong): (We hoped if Sue could return soon.)

RIGHT: We hoped *that* Sue could return soon.

(wrong): (Yesterday a reporter announced that several homes have been destroyed.)

RIGHT: Yesterday a reporter announced that several homes *had been destroyed*.

(wrong): (He thought he can remember the woman's name but he can't.)

RIGHT: He thought he *could* remember the woman's name but he *couldn't*.

(wrong): (I don't know as I can recall her name.)

RIGHT: I don't know if (or: whether) I can recall her name.

#### EXERCISE IV. 1.

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb in the parentheses.

- We were asked not to disturb the baby because he (sleep) \_\_\_\_\_.
- He mentioned that he (be) \_\_\_\_\_ in court the previous day.
- When Laura was stopped by the officer, she insisted that she (cross, not) \_\_\_\_\_ the intersection on a red light.
- Since it was a beautiful day, Rafael thought he (hike) \_\_\_\_\_ in the forest for a few hours.
- When the press secretary claimed that he (have, not) \_\_\_\_\_ any information, the reporters (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ the room.
- Fred believed that his friend (promote) \_\_\_\_\_ by his employer a month or so ago.
- The legislator noticed that there (be) \_\_\_\_\_ nine signatures on the bottom of the letter.
- The article stated that everyone on the sinking ship (save) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Didn't they tell you that they (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ television now?
- The instructor wanted to know if we (have) \_\_\_\_\_ any questions.



## EXERCISE IV. 2.

Change the following direct speech to formal indirect speech. Use the past tense of the reporting verb in the parentheses. The subject is given.

1. "Betty is an excellent student." (tell)  
I \_\_\_\_\_
2. "She's going on a business trip next week." (say)  
She \_\_\_\_\_
3. "Are you planning to take a speech course?" (want to know)  
He \_\_\_\_\_
4. "Paul hasn't eaten breakfast yet." (think)  
We \_\_\_\_\_
5. "How long has she been married?" (wonder)  
Joe \_\_\_\_\_

## EXERCISE IV. 3.

Practice asking and answering questions such as the following.

1. What did she say?
2. What did he want to know?
3. What did they ask you?
4. What did the reviewer say about the film?
5. What did the reporter say about the news?
6. What did the weather forecaster say about the weather?
7. What did she say that she was doing?
8. What did you tell them about your future plans?

## EXERCISE IV. 4.

Underline the indirect or direct speech errors in each of the following sentences. Correct the error as in number 1. (Use the formal sequence of tenses.)

1. The director was told last week that Dusit resides in San Diego.
2. When I saw him last night, he said that he is soon going to look for a job.
3. Mrs. Vasquez promised that she will help us with the party Saturday.
4. Did the reporter announce when would the politician declare his candidacy?
5. They apparently knew that he divorced his wife and remarried.
6. I believe that Johann had to leave next Friday.
7. Can you tell me when will she be conducting a seminar?
8. Last month a few students asked me do I like teaching.
9. Heinz shouted that he can't answer the door because he's in the shower.
10. As soon as Fedora heard Dick's voice on the telephone, she could tell that he has just awakened.



# Five

## THE CONDITIONAL FORM

### CONDITIONAL CLAUSES

**Conditional clauses** describe an activity that may or may not occur, depending on circumstances. They frequently begin with *if* or *unless*. The conditional form is used in four ways: present general, future possible, present unreal, and past unreal. In examining the following examples, you will recognize that you studied the present general in the Present Time section, and the future possible in the Future Time section. Note that conditional clauses may precede or come after the main (independent) clause.

Present general: He gets good grades *if (or: when) he studies.*

He doesn't get good grades *unless he studies.*

Future possible: If it doesn't rain, the party will be outdoors.

Unless it rains, the party will be outdoors.

---

**NOTE:** In the sentences above, notice the difference between an *if* clause and an *unless* clause. The *if* clause has the effect of "cooperating" with the main clause action. The *unless* clause has the potential effect of "cancelling" the main clause action.

---

**Conditional unreal clauses** describe imagined situations rather than true or real situations. Such clauses are said to be in the **subjunctive mood**, "subjunctive" meaning "unreal." The unreal situation may, in fact, be the exact opposite of the truth. *Past form verbs are used in unreal situations.*

Compare:

Future possible: If I *have* time, I'll call her. (I may have time)

Present unreal: If I *had* time, I *would* call her. (but I don't have time so I can't call her)

Past unreal: If I *had had* time yesterday, I *would have* called her. (but I didn't have time yesterday, so I couldn't call her)

Use the present unreal form to describe an imagined situation in the present or in the future. Note the verb forms in the following chart.



"If" Clause	Main Clause
Use past tense of the action verb	Use <i>would, could, might</i> , + simple form of verb
If George had a million dollars, If Nino took voice lessons, If she worked overtime, If Miss Wilson didn't have a secretary,	he could travel all over the world. he might become a great singer. she could make extra money. she would have to type the reports herself.
Use only the <i>were</i> form of <i>be</i> no matter what the subject	Use <i>would, could, might</i>
If I were you, If you were here, If she were an accountant, If there were a radio in his room,	I would tell him about the plan. we might go deep-sea diving together. she wouldn't have to hire one he could listen to the news.
Sometimes <i>were</i> + infinitive is used to speculate about the future.	Use <i>would, could, might</i>
If Ken were to become a doctor, (or: if Ken became a doctor) If George were to buy a small car, If they were to grow vegetables,	he would practice medicine in his home town. he might save money on gasoline. they could preserve them for the winter.

- (wrong): (We could shop now if the store was open.)  
xxxxx  
 RIGHT: We could shop now if the store *were* open.  
 (wrong): (If Gladys comes on time every day, she wouldn't miss the review.)  
xxxxxxxxx  
 RIGHT: If Gladys *came* on time every day, she wouldn't miss the review.  
 (wrong): (If the consul speaks English, he wouldn't need a translator.)  
xxxxxxxxxxx  
 RIGHT: If the consul *spoke* English, he *wouldn't* need a translator.

Use the past unreal form to describe an imagined situation in the past.

"If" clause	Main Clause
Use past perfect of the action verb	Use <i>would have, could have, might have</i> , + past participle of the verb
If Moi had recorded the data, If I hadn't taken my friend's advice, If he had set his alarm, If he had had some money,	he could have written a fine report. I would have regretted it later. he wouldn't have been late for class. he would have been able to buy a new suit.
Use only the <i>had been</i> form of <i>be</i>	Use <i>would have, could have, might have</i>
If she had been at the party last night, If they had been happy, If the test had not been difficult, If we had been there,	she could have met Raul. they might have continued to live together. she probably would have passed. we might have been able to help.
Even if the action of the main clause is in the present or future, use the past perfect of the verb in the <i>if</i> clause if the imagined situation is in the past	Use <i>would, could, might</i>
If Humberto had bought new guitar strings, If I had studied Spanish, If they had invested in that stock,	he would play for the class today. I could speak Spanish with my South American cousin. they might be wealthy now.







Clauses beginning with *as if* and *as though* are often in the subjunctive mood. (*As if* and *as though* clauses have the same meaning.) They are used to express actions that appear to be true but are probably *not true*. *Past form verbs* are used in these clauses. When the action in the *as if* or *as though* clause takes place at the same time as the action in the main clause, use *past tense*. Other tenses may be used in the main clause. Use the *were* form of *be*.

1. She has eaten the meal *as though she liked it*. (Later she confessed that she had disliked it.)
2. At the game last night, he was talking *as though he were a professional baseball player*.
3. There's a statue in the park that looks *as if it could walk away*.

*As if* and *as though* may be used in a future possible sense if the action is likely to happen. In this case do not use subjunctive mood verbs.

1. It looks *as if the plane will take off on time*. (likely)
2. According to the forecast, it appears *as though there will soon be a storm*. (likely)

(wrong): (The author writes *as if he feels every emotion of his characters*.) (unlikely)

RIGHT: The author writes *as if he felt every emotion of his characters*.

When the action in the *as if* or *as though* clause takes place *earlier* than the action in the main clause, use *past perfect* in the *as if* or *as though* clause. Use the *had been* form of *be*.

1. She acts excited, *as though she had received some wonderful news*.
2. Minasyan spoke English *as though he had been born in the United States*.
3. Every time I see him, I feel *as if we had met years ago*.
4. Sheila seemed shocked. She acted *as though she had seen a ghost*.
5. He was wet from head to foot when we saw him. He looked *as if he had been swimming (or: had swum) with all of his clothes on*.

(wrong): (The antique Persian carpet looks *as if it were woven recently*.)

RIGHT: The antique Persian carpet looks *as if it had been woven recently*.

(wrong): (Bertha played the organ *as if she took a great many lessons*.)

RIGHT: Bertha played the organ *as if she had taken a great many lessons*.

Sentences with *wish* are in the subjunctive mood.

*Wish* is used to express present desire that is contrary to fact and to express regret about a past experience. *Wish* is followed by a *that* noun clause.

When expressing present desire, use the *past tense* or the *past modal* in the *that* clause. Use the *were* form of *be*.

1. He wishes that he *knew* the names of all the employees.
2. I wish (that) I *could play* the cello.
3. They wish they *didn't have to repeat* the course.
4. Sometimes he wishes he *were* back in his native country.
5. Do you wish that your home *were heated* by solar equipment?

(wrong): (She wishes that they will remember her birthday.)

RIGHT: She wishes that they *would* remember her birthday.

(wrong): (He wish there was a swimming pool near his house.)



RIGHT: He *wishes* there *were* a swimming pool near his house.

(wrong): (They wish they have a larger home.)

RIGHT: They wish they *had* a larger home.

When using *wish* to express regret about a past experience, use the past perfect or the past perfect modal in the *that* clause. Use the *had been* form of *be*.

1. Lee Yoo wishes that he *had taken* a trip abroad before starting college.
2. Francette wishes that she *hadn't told* Pierre about losing the money.
3. They said that they *wished they had saved* more money. (In formal English, the past tense of *wish* is used with a reporting verb.)
4. Stan told us he wished he *had been warned* about the storm before he went sailing.
5. Andy wishes that he *could have gone* to the moon with the astronauts. (or: *would have been able to go* to the moon with the astronauts.)

(wrong): (Displeased with the leader's policies, many wish they *didn't vote* for the man.)

RIGHT: Displeased with the leader's policies, many wish they *hadn't voted* for the man.

(wrong): (Bill wishes he were there when the wedding-took place.)

RIGHT: Bill wishes he *had been* there when the wedding took place.

(wrong): (He wishes that he could avoid the accident last week.)

RIGHT: He wishes that he *could have avoided* the accident last week (or *had been able to avoid* the accident last week).

*Wish* is often used in **shortened clauses** as a response.

1. Did he see the exhibit last week? No, but he wishes he had. (had seen the exhibit)
2. She plays the piano beautifully. I wish I could.
3. Bob doesn't have to work next Saturday. Sue wishes that she didn't.

### EXERCISE V. 1.

Fill in the following blanks using the correct form of the verb or the modal.

1. She would have returned the books if she (remember) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. If we (repair, not) \_\_\_\_\_ the roof last summer, the living room (be) \_\_\_\_\_ wet now.
3. The Nolans will have to get a permit if they (remodel) \_\_\_\_\_ their house.
4. The sky is so red, it looks as if (be) \_\_\_\_\_ on fire.
5. I wish the agenda (change, not) \_\_\_\_\_ at last night's meeting.
6. Chung (cook) \_\_\_\_\_ a Chinese dinner for us last night if he (have) \_\_\_\_\_ the proper ingredients.
7. If she (be) \_\_\_\_\_ free now, she (get) \_\_\_\_\_ a job as a social director on a big ship, but she wants to keep her present job.
8. If your friend makes a very important scientific contribution, she (receive) \_\_\_\_\_ a Nobel prize.
9. Ann wishes that she (receive) \_\_\_\_\_ a better salary so that she could move to a larger apartment.
10. The bedspread was beautiful! It looked as though it (make) \_\_\_\_\_ by hand many centuries ago.



## EXERCISE V. 2.

The verb error is in the *second clause* of each of the following sentences. Underline the error and correct it.

1. She spoke in a very low voice as though everyone was asleep.
2. If they had had any extra time, they would visit the Tower of London.
3. Please tell him that I wish he stops making so much noise.
4. You won't have to pay a fine if you returned the book on time.
5. The yellow rose in the garden was so perfect, it looked as if it was artificial.
6. If my guests should arrive early, please tell them I would be back soon.
7. Many people would still be afflicted with polio if a vaccine weren't discovered.
8. Don't you wish that the cost of living was as inexpensive as it used to be.

## EXERCISE V. 3.

Practice asking and answering the following questions.

1. If you could choose anything you wanted, what would you choose?
2. If you had a camera, what would you photograph?
3. What are some subjects that you wish you knew more about?
4. Have you ever known anyone who spends money as if he were rich?
5. If you had more free time, what would you do?
6. Where would you have gone last summer if you had had an opportunity to travel?
7. What are some things that you wish you hadn't said or hadn't done?
8. If you could have three wishes, what would they be?

## MIXED EXERCISE 6: PART A

Fill in the circled letter that represents the *correct* form. Be able to give a reason for your selection.

1. The Easter parade \_\_\_\_\_ by huge crowds, even though it rained. (A) (B) (C) (D)
 

A. was saw	C. was seeing
B. was seen	D. has seen
2. He probably could have passed the exam if he \_\_\_\_\_ well-prepared. (A) (B) (C) (D)
 

A. were	C. had been
B. was	D. has been
3. While the secretary \_\_\_\_\_ his desk, he found the long lost report. (A) (B) (C) (D)
 

A. had been clearing	C. has been clearing
B. is clearing	D. was clearing
4. This morning she mentioned on the telephone that she \_\_\_\_\_ tonight. (A) (B) (C) (D)
 

A. wouldn't be going	C. isn't going
B. won't be going	D. will not be going
5. The adverse publicity \_\_\_\_\_ the company a great deal of money. (A) (B) (C) (D)
 

A. may costs	C. could be cost
B. expects to cost	D. must be costing



6. Generally Mr. Rubin is available for consultation but today he \_\_\_\_\_ some friends. (A B C D)  
 A. entertains C. is entertaining  
 B. has been entertained D. is being entertain
7. If the Titanic had had additional lifeboats, more people \_\_\_\_\_. (A B C D)  
 A. could be saved C. could have been save  
 B. could have saved D. could have been saved
8. Thoroughly confused, the investigator hesitated to report \_\_\_\_\_. (A B C D)  
 A. what did he see C. what had he seen  
 B. what he had seen D. what he was seen
9. Josie doesn't work in the factory any longer and \_\_\_\_\_. (A B C D)  
 A. either does her husband C. her husband doesn't too  
 B. also doesn't her husband D. neither does her husband
10. That plant looked as if it \_\_\_\_\_ in a long time. (A B C D)  
 A. hadn't been watered C. didn't watered  
 B. hasn't any water D. wasn't watered

MIXED EXERCISE 6: PART B

Fill in the circled letter that represents the *incorrect* form. Be able to explain why the word or phrase you have chosen is not acceptable and how you can correct it.

1. Billy tried to get a large group to clean up the park but he has found only one person willing to help. (A B C D)  
 A B C D (A B C D)
2. The officer explained to the driver that he had broke the law by his failure to signal while he was turning left. (A B C D)  
 A B C D (A B C D)
3. Mrs. Murray will like to speak to you as soon as you have finished doing your exercises, and she says to tell you that it will take just a few minutes. (A B C D)  
 A B C D (A B C D)
4. Our friends have a son who is only nine years old but sometimes he acts as if he was nineteen. (A B C D)  
 A B C D (A B C D)
5. You have better be careful when you drive because the roads, according to the newcast, are very slippery. (A B C D)  
 A B C D (A B C D)
6. Don't you think that she would have helped you yesterday if she were able to? (A B C D)  
 A B C D (A B C D)
7. The young executive was told that if the computer didn't function properly, he will have to use alternative means. (A B C D)  
 A B C D (A B C D)



8. If the drilling platform had built to withstand the violent storms, it wouldn't have collapsed.  
A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
9. The nurse said us to enter the room very quietly because the patient, who had just had an operation, might be sleeping.  
A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
10. Ordinarily, he would have never considered accepting a position before graduation but he wanted to work with the eminent scientist.  
A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)

MIXED EXERCISE 1 PART 2



# Six

## VERBALS

A *verbal* is derived from a verb. The four kinds of verbals discussed in this section are infinitives, gerunds, verb words, and Present Participles.

Verbs must be followed by the correct *verbal*.

Infinitive:	She forgot <i>to put</i> her name on her paper.
Gerund:	Troy enjoys <i>dancing</i> .
Verb word (or simple verb):	She let him <i>borrow</i> her car.
Present participle:	The police caught the boy <i>stealing</i> .

### INFINITIVES

Infinitives are used in the following ways:

1. To complete the meaning of the verb.  
The child started to cry.  
They agreed not to leave before 5:00 P.M.
2. To complete the meaning of adjectives.  
Stewart seems anxious to leave.  
Magdy was careful not to upset her parents.
3. To show purpose and reason. (The full expression is in order to.)  
He works overtime to earn extra money.  
They studied hard in order to pass the test.
4. After expressions with *too*.  
We arrived too late to see the first act.  
She may be too tired to go.
5. After expressions with *enough*.  
She wasn't strong enough to lift the box.  
He had enough patience to help everyone.
6. To describe skill ability with *how*.  
Haim knows how to make beautiful kites (not: knows to make).  
Celia has learned how to sew (or: has learned to sew).
7. After information words (*what, which, where, how, etc.*), infinitives instead of noun clauses may be used. Compare the first two sentences below.  
I don't know which road I should take.  
I don't know which road to take.



She can't decide how many people to invite.

Do you know where to register?

She couldn't make up her mind what to wear.

8. As a subject or as an object. Words that are combined with the infinitive, form an infinitive phrase.

To get eight hours sleep each night is not always possible.

To tease animals is cruel.

Not to speak more than one language can be a disadvantage.

Bob's job is to lock the windows and the doors.

9. In sentences with *it* as a subject. *It* refers to the infinitive. Compare the first two sentences below.

To get eight hours sleep each night is not always possible.

It is not always possible to get eight hours' sleep each night.

It has taken a long time to finish the project.

It's a good idea to review the material.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (The nurse asked the visitor to quietly open the door.) The infinitive is seldom separated.

RIGHT: The nurse asked the visitor to open the door quietly.

(wrong): (She gave her son some money for buy roller skates.)

RIGHT: She gave her son some money to buy roller skates.

(wrong): (They didn't know what for to do about the situation.)

RIGHT: They didn't know what to do about the situation.

### Other Types of Infinitives

A *continuous infinitive* (*to be + -ing* form) is used to emphasize the continuing sense of an action occurring at the time of the main verb.

He said he was happy to be working with our staff.

She's delighted to be studying art with a famous artist.

Mr. Foley was sorry to be delaying us but he had to wait for a telephone call.

A *perfect infinitive* (*to have + past participle*) is used to describe an activity that occurred earlier than the main verb action.

I am sorry to have caused you trouble this morning.

She appears to have understood the lesson this morning.

Mary Beth can't find her keys. She seems to have lost them.

A *perfect continuous infinitive* (*to have + been + -ing* form) is used to emphasize the continuing activity that occurred earlier than the main verb action.

She claims to have been sleeping when the crime occurred.

Ned is perspiring. He appears to have been exercising vigorously.



A *passive infinitive* (*to be + past participle*) is used to express an action that occurs to the subject. (The subject does not do the action.)

Tom hopes *to be promoted* soon.  
Pollution is a serious problem that needs *to be dealt with*.  
Vera will probably *want to be driven* to the ophthalmologist.

A *perfect passive infinitive* (*to have + been + past participle*) is used to express an action that happened to the subject earlier than the action in the main verb.

The telephone is working now; it seems *to have been repaired*.  
She is thrilled *to have been invited* to the White House by the president himself.  
Many of the sculptures in Venice appear *to have been eroded* by time and the elements.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

- (wrong): (Leo is fortunate ~~to find~~ his wallet yesterday.)  
RIGHT: Leo is fortunate *to have found* his wallet yesterday.  
(wrong): (The investigative committee claimed ~~to uncover~~ a fraud last week.)  
RIGHT: The investigative committee claimed *to have uncovered* a fraud last week.  
(wrong): (Doris was displeased ~~to have found out~~ that someone had copied her paper.)  
RIGHT: Doris was displeased *to find* out that someone had copied her paper.  
(wrong): (The employees expect ~~to give~~ a raise in pay soon.)  
RIGHT: The employees expect *to be given* a raise in pay soon.  
(wrong): (All the gifts are still wrapped in paper. They appear ~~not to be opened~~.)  
RIGHT: All the gifts are still wrapped. They appear *not to have been opened*.

### Verbs Followed by Infinitives

Some verbs can be followed by an object (a noun or a pronoun) plus an infinitive. The object performs the infinitive action.

Myron taught his daughter *to drive*.

Some verbs cannot be followed by a direct object before the infinitive. In this case, the subject performs the infinitive action.

Jeff refused *to sign* the contract.

Still other verbs may be used in either of the above ways.

The company wants Jody *to prepare* a financial report.  
The company wants *to send* a financial report to its stockholders.

Study the following charts, which list the three types of verbs.



Verb + Infinitive			Verb + Object + Infinitive	
afford	fail	plan	advise	order
agree	forget	pretend	allow	permit
arrange	hesitate	refuse	cause	persuade
care	hope	remember	challenge	remind
consent	know how	say	command	request
decide	learn	threaten	convince	require
demand	manage	volunteer	encourage	teach
deserve	mean	want	forbid	tell
expect	need	wish	force	urge
	offer		hire	warn
			instruct	
			invite	
VERB + INFINITIVE or VERB + OBJECT + INFINITIVE				
ask, beg, dare, expect, help, like, promise, want, wish, would like				

Practice using the verbs in the chart above as in the following examples. Notice that the verb, or verb plus object, may be separated from the infinitive by a word, a phrase, or a clause.

- Natalia agrees, after consulting with her advisor, *to take* the course.
- The research institute can't afford, at this time, *to hire* additional staff members.
- Those who took the nature class last month have learned *not to disturb* delicate plant life.
- She said that she didn't care *to see* the recital.
- Cary has volunteered *to supply* the drinks for the picnic.
- Sam may refuse, since he's rather shy, *to make* a speech.
- She told them *to listen* carefully. or: She said *to listen* carefully.
- Mrs. Yokota has advised Elsie *to review* the material.
- The director persuaded the actress *to use* another interpretation.
- The instructor reminded his students *to bring* their book reports.
- The forest ranger permitted us *to build* a fire in the clearing.
- Mr. Marcus, the chief buyer, is expecting his assistants *to complete* the inventory by the end of the day.
- Mr. Marcus, the chief buyer, is expecting *to complete* the inventory by the end of the day.
- Jenny asked Jim *to work* on the project with Steve.
- Yuko asked *to work* on the project also.
- Next week Ismael will be helping the professor *to gather* data.
- He will be helping *to find* information on early experiments.
- The child begged her mother *to allow* her to stay up late.
- The child begged *to stay up* late.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Julius offered his friend ~~to drive~~ him to the airport.)

RIGHT: Julius offered *to drive* his friend to the airport.

(wrong): (Alex refused, much to the surprise of the others, ~~answering~~ the question.)

RIGHT: Alex refused, much to the surprise of the others, *to answer* the question.

(wrong): (Mrs. Genet wants her antiques ~~to give~~ to a museum after her death.)

RIGHT: Mrs. Genet wants her antiques *to be given* to a museum after her death.

(wrong): (She told to them ~~to listen~~ carefully.)

RIGHT: She told them *to listen* carefully.

RIGHT: She said *to listen* carefully.



**NOTE:** The verbs that are followed by an object before the infinitive may be changed to passive voice, in which case no object is used before the infinitive.

Compare:

The manager required the store clerks to attend a sales meeting.

The store clerks were required to attend a sales meeting.

(wrong): (The store clerks were required them to attend a sales meeting.)

**NOTE:** The verbs *hope*, *decide*, *agree*, *pretend*, and *promise* are often followed by a *that* clause instead of by an infinitive; approximately the same meaning is retained.

Compare:

Miss Ross hopes to find a solution soon.

Miss Ross hopes that she can find a solution soon.

The above option, however, is not true of most verbs.

(wrong): (The earthquake caused that the building collapsed.)

RIGHT: The earthquake caused *the building to collapse*.

(wrong): (He deserved that he should get the award.)

RIGHT: He deserved *to get the award*.

#### Infinitives in Short Responses

The *to* of the infinitive is used in short responses to questions and statements, and also in short clause endings.

"Why did you take the longer route?" "I *wanted to*." (not: "I wanted.")

"He was surprised when he got an A on his composition." "Yes, he *hadn't expected to*." (not: "Yes, he hadn't expected.")

Becky walks five miles every day because she *likes to*. (not: because she likes.)

**NOTE:** Add *be* to the *to* in the infinitive if the question or statement is in the passive voice.

"She seemed to be troubled by something." "Yes, she *seemed to be*."

"Does he expect to be promoted?" "Yes, he *expects to be*."

#### EXERCISE VI. 1.

Using the words in the parentheses, complete the following sentences with the correct form of the infinitive. Add an object before the infinitive when necessary. When you are finished, read the sentences again, paying special attention to the various forms (verbs, adjectives, nouns, pronouns) that the infinitives follow.

1. Last night Rudy invited (come) \_\_\_\_\_ to his place for dessert.
2. The couple agreed, after talking it over, (move, not) \_\_\_\_\_ to another apartment.



3. A few small companies have reduced their prices (compete) \_\_\_\_\_ for a larger share of the market.
4. Mrs. Brooks allowed (use) \_\_\_\_\_ her kitchen facilities.
5. Irving has managed, at last, (pass) \_\_\_\_\_ the driver's test.
6. It is possible, even if one attends school part time, (obtain) \_\_\_\_\_ an advanced degree.
7. The hall clock doesn't work. It needs (repair) \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Did she hurt his feelings? She (mean, not) \_\_\_\_\_. (Give short response.)
9. We've decided that it's too late (change) \_\_\_\_\_ our plans.
10. She's of course very pleased (chose) \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday by the committee to represent them at the convention.
11. Jane's father has been encouraging (apply) \_\_\_\_\_ for the position.
12. Nojan is disappointed (win, not) \_\_\_\_\_ the athletic award.
13. Wouldn't it be wonderful (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a reunion next year?
14. He has failed, even after several attempts, (set) \_\_\_\_\_ a new speed record.
15. I wish he had been careful (touch, not) \_\_\_\_\_ the wet paint.
16. The candidate promised, after repeated questioning, (give) \_\_\_\_\_ reporters an answer the following week.
17. She's a good partner with whom (practice) \_\_\_\_\_ conversation.
18. Have you asked (give) \_\_\_\_\_ another assignment?
19. She seemed uncertain as to where (register) \_\_\_\_\_ for the class.
20. The girls couldn't communicate because neither one knew how (speak) \_\_\_\_\_ the other one's language.
21. Sometimes it's difficult (make) \_\_\_\_\_ a decision.
22. Do you have enough time this afternoon (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the observatory with me?
23. Mrs. Jackson has been unable (find) \_\_\_\_\_ her map of the United States. It appears (take) \_\_\_\_\_ out of the classroom.

## GERUNDS

A *gerund* functions as a noun and may be used as a subject, an object, or an object of a preposition. Think of a gerund as a "noun activity." Gerunds have an *-ing* ending.

Gerund subject:	<i>Fishing is a pleasant activity.</i>
Gerund object:	<i>My husband enjoys fishing.</i>
Gerund object of a preposition:	<i>The family is interested in fishing.</i>

**NOTE:** A gerund subject is often used instead of an infinitive construction.

To fly a kite is fun.  
 It is fun to fly a kite.  
*Flying a kite is fun.* (Additional words can be added to the gerund to form a *gerund phrase*.)

Since a gerund functions as a noun, the possessive form of a noun or a pronoun must be used with a gerund. Compare:

Unfortunately, we missed *his speech* about Early Man.  
 Unfortunately, we missed *his speaking* about Early Man.  
 (wrong): (Unfortunately, we missed *him speaking* about Early Man.)



## Gerunds With Verbs

The following verbs are followed by a *gerund*.

admit	finish	regret
anticipate	imagine	remember
appreciate	mention	resent
avoid	miss	resist
consider	postpone	risk
delay	practice	stop
deny	quit	suggest
discuss	recall	tolerate
enjoy	recommend	understand

Practice the verbs above as in the following examples. (Notice, in some of the examples, the verb or expression is separated from the gerund by a word, a phrase, or a clause.)

1. The supervisor **appreciated** Rona's *finishing* the job before she went home.
2. Heads of the firm **are considering**, if indeed it is feasible, *installing* newly-developed robots.
3. The officer **suggested** their *not walking* alone in remote areas of the park.
4. The brochure **recommends** everyone's *reserving* seats for the concerts.
5. Can you **imagine** *living* in the times of the American frontier?
6. Why don't you **quit**, once and for all, *smoking* cigarettes?
7. Mr. Chapman **can't tolerate** her *being* late so frequently.
8. She tries to **avoid**, if she possibly can, *discussing* controversial subjects.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Their mechanic has recommended them to take their car to a foreign car expert.)

RIGHT: Their mechanic has recommended *their taking* their car to a foreign car expert.

The following verbs can be followed by either a gerund or an infinitive.

advise	forget	prefer
attempt	hate	remember
begin	hesitate	start
continue	intend	stop
dislike	like	try
forbid	need	

Practice the verbs above as in the following examples.

1. It **began** *raining*.
2. It **began** *to rain*.
3. Miss McLean **prefers** *contacting* her clients in person.
4. Miss McLean **prefers** *to contact* her clients in person.
5. His family **have been advising** *his consulting* a lawyer.
6. His family **have been advising** *him to consult* a lawyer.



---

**NOTE:** In the following examples the verbs differ in meaning, depending on the form of the verbal.

---

7. Kurt **remembered** (didn't forget to do something) *to give* Kay the message.
8. Brian **remembered** (recalled from the past) *seeing* the painting a few years ago.
9. Florencio **stopped** (halted) *to look* in the store window.
10. Connie **had stopped** (ceased) *biting* her nails when I saw her last week.
11. She promised that she **wouldn't forget** (would remember to do something) *to bring* the music the next day.
12. I'll **never forget** (or: I'll always recall) my spilling wine on the hostess's white dress.

---

**NOTE:** *Need* may be followed by a gerund or a passive infinitive. The gerund in this sense has the same meaning as the passive infinitive.

---

13. This typewriter **needs** *repairing*.
14. This typewriter **needs** *to be repaired*.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (The dean intends to forbid the students ~~smoke~~ in class.)

RIGHT: The dean intends to forbid the students *to smoke* in class.

RIGHT: The dean intends to forbid *students' smoking* in class.

RIGHT: The dean intends to forbid *smoking* in class.

#### Gerunds With Other Expressions

The following verb idioms and expressions are followed by a gerund.

can't stand, can't bear

can't help

have trouble (also have: a good time, a hard time, a problem, difficulty)

mind, never mind

make money

no use

spend time, spend money

take turns

Practice the idioms and expressions above as in the following examples.

1. Claude **spends his free time** *reading* history books.
2. She said that she **didn't mind** *waiting* until we got back.
3. The movie was so sad that they **couldn't help** *crying*.
4. In the debate, each team **must take turns** *presenting* arguments.
5. **Never mind** *cooking*. We'll go out to eat.
6. Steve **makes extra money** *waiting on tables* in the evening.
7. Some of the students seem **to have a hard time** *memorizing* the vocabulary.
8. There's **no use** *worrying*; she'll probably call you soon.
9. I **couldn't stand** *listening* to the loud music last night.
10. That collector **spends his money** *buying* old comic books.



Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Emiko, my neighbor, had a wonderful time last summer ~~to go to the Broadway~~  
shows.)

RIGHT: Emiko, my neighbor, had a wonderful time last summer *going* to the Broadway shows.

Prepositions, including prepositions that follow verbs, must be followed by a noun or a pronoun. Since a gerund functions as a noun, it can be the object of a preposition.

Practice following verbs plus prepositions with *gerunds*, as in the following examples. (See Verbs with Prepositions in Section VII.)

1. Some people disapprove of *marching* as a means of protesting.
2. He apologized to them for *taking up* their time.
3. One can always depend on their *being* helpful.
4. We walked in the rain without *carrying* umbrellas.
5. The experience was like *floating* on a cloud.
6. Besides *working* eight hours every day, he works three hours at night.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Tito was capable of ~~to do the work~~ unassisted.)

RIGHT: Tito was capable of *doing* the work unassisted.

Idioms and Two-Word Verbs with prepositions, (such as *feel like, "be" used to, keep on, look forward to*) must be followed by a noun, pronoun, or gerund. (See Idioms in the Supplement.)

1. It was such a lovely day, we felt like *taking* a walk along the beach.
2. Henry Thoreau, a well-known American writer, had been used to *living* very simply when he wrote "Walden Pond."
3. At his wife's insistence, Mr. Neiman cut out *working* twelve hours a day.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (The child was irritable because he wasn't used to ~~stay up late~~.)

RIGHT: The child was irritable because he wasn't used to *staying up* late.

Gerunds are used in many common expressions with the verb *go*.

go camping	go hunting	go skating
go dancing	go jogging	go skiing
go fishing	go sailing	go swimming
go hiking	go shopping	go walking

Practice the *go* expressions as in the following examples.

1. The girls went *shopping* last night.
2. We're going to go *sailing* next weekend.
3. The Petrovich family will have gone *camping* by the time we finish summer school.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (The Chang brothers aren't home. Every Sunday they go ~~to sail~~.)

RIGHT: The Chang brothers aren't home. Every Sunday they go *sailing*.



Gerunds are also a part of many expressions with the preposition *by*, when it means "by what means."

Practice the *by* expressions as in the following examples.

1. Beatriz was able to take a trip *by arranging* her schedule.
2. He didn't have a car, so he got to the station *by walking*.
3. *By being* prepared, one can usually do well on a test.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (The truth was learned by ~~question~~ the witness.)

RIGHT: The truth was learned by *questioning* the witness.

#### Perfect Form of the Gerund

Perfect gerunds are used to make clear that the gerund activity was completed before the action in the main verb.

*having* + past participle of the verb

Regular gerunds, however, may be used with approximately the same meaning. Compare:

perfect gerund Our *having read* the book spoiled the film for us.

regular gerund Our *reading* the book spoiled the film for us.

1. Mike seems worried about his *having omitted* a number of questions.  
or: Mike seems worried about his *omitting* a number of questions.
2. *Having been* a pediatric nurse a few years ago was an advantage for Victoria as a mother.  
or: *Being* a pediatric nurse a few years ago was an advantage for Victoria as a mother.
3. Yung appreciates *having won* the school prize for academic excellence.  
or: Yung appreciates *winning* the school prize for academic excellence.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Them ~~having~~ had a good education was of great benefit in getting good jobs.)

RIGHT: *Their having* had a good education was of great benefit in getting good jobs.

#### Passive Form of the Gerund

Gerunds may also be used in the passive form.

*being* + past participle.

1. The children are enjoying *being entertained* by the clowns.
2. *Being carried* on his father's shoulders made it possible for little Benny to see the parade.
3. The members of the tour are looking forward to *being taken* through the palace.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (The cat didn't appear to enjoy ~~holding~~.)

RIGHT: The cat didn't appear to enjoy *being held*.

#### Perfect Passive Form of the Gerund

Perfect passive gerunds are used to make clear that the passive gerund activity was completed before the action in the main verb.

*having been* + past participle



Regular passive gerunds with *being* may be used with approximately the same meaning.

Compare:

perfect passive gerund	The child told us about <i>having been taught</i> two languages at the same time.
passive gerund	The child told us about <i>being taught</i> two languages at the same time.

1. They are discussing the problem of their *having been evicted*. or: They are discussing the problem of their *being evicted*.
2. She appreciates *having been given* an extension on repaying the loan. or: She appreciates *being given* an extension on repaying the loan.
3. Mako's *having been asked* to give a speech completely surprised her friend. or: Mako's *being asked* to give a speech completely surprised her friend.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (The defendant didn't recall *having been inform* of his rights.)

RIGHT: The defendant didn't recall *having been informed* of his rights.

## EXERCISE VI. 2.

Complete the following with the *correct* form of the infinitive or the gerund.

1. He finished (work) \_\_\_\_\_ at 3:00 P.M.
2. The children didn't want to walk because they were used to (pick up) \_\_\_\_\_ at school each day by their mother.
3. Although the majority appeared (be) \_\_\_\_\_ disinterested, the speaker kept right on (talk) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Would you mind (turn on, not) \_\_\_\_\_ the radio?
5. Javad is considering (take) \_\_\_\_\_ the job because he needs (get) \_\_\_\_\_ additional experience.
6. A few years ago she wouldn't have been able, even in an emergency, (commu-  
nicate) \_\_\_\_\_ in English.
7. The woman admitted, after several hours of (question) \_\_\_\_\_, (use) \_\_\_\_\_  
someone else's credit card.
8. Tony is fortunate, as is his friend, (find) \_\_\_\_\_ by the rescue team when he  
went (hunt) \_\_\_\_\_ last week.
9. He decided (risk, not) \_\_\_\_\_, after (have) \_\_\_\_\_ such a successful career,  
(lose) \_\_\_\_\_ his license.
10. Sometimes she dreams of (carry) \_\_\_\_\_ away on a white horse by a hand-  
some young prince.
11. It was difficult to understand (reduce, they) \_\_\_\_\_ the amount of money allo-  
cated for education.
12. She couldn't help, even though she tried not to, (laugh) \_\_\_\_\_ at the odd  
clothing which her friend was wearing.
13. You must practice, in order to improve (speak, you) \_\_\_\_\_ and (write)  
\_\_\_\_\_.
14. Members were told that the organization couldn't afford, due to unforeseen  
expenses, (purchase) \_\_\_\_\_ new furnishings.
15. Mrs. Ting has managed, despite other obligations, (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to college and  
(work) \_\_\_\_\_ the past year by carefully (arrange) \_\_\_\_\_ her schedule.
16. They told us that they very much looked forward to (visit, we) \_\_\_\_\_ them and  
that they had many things (discuss) \_\_\_\_\_ with us.



## VERB WORDS

A *verb word* is an infinitive without *to*. In the infinitive *to walk*, the verb word is *walk*. A verb word is often called the simple base or **root form of the verb**.

A verb word follows modals and expressions such as the following.

can	shall	must	would rather
could	should	had better	would (you) please
will	may		
would	might		

Practice as in the following examples. Notice that the modal or expression may be separated from the verb word.

1. **Would you please**, if you have time, *come* to my office today.
2. She **must**, before she drives anywhere, *buy* automobile insurance.
3. You **had better** *not visit* him until the doctor tells you **to**.
4. Chan **would rather**, if it's all right with everyone, *cook* dinner than go out.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (We'd better, since we're not sure, **to ask** one of the students what the assignment is.)

RIGHT: We'd better, since we're not sure, *ask* one of the students what the assignment is.

Auxiliaries followed by a verb word are:

do, does, did

Yun Bi stated that she **didn't own** a car but that she **did own** a sailboat.

**Do** the birds in that region of the world *migrate* to other areas?

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Billy **did**, contrary to his parents' belief, **to call** home last night, but the telephone was out of order.)

RIGHT: Billy **did**, contrary to his parents' belief, *call* home last night, but the telephone was out of order.

*Let* and *make* are followed by a verb word.

1. The sergeant **made** the recruits *run* four miles before breakfast.
2. Mr. Rampal believes in **letting** his children *learn* from their mistakes.
3. I wish she'd **let** her dog, the one that barks all night, *come* into the house.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Mrs. Flanders **made** the boys, whose boots were muddy, **to take off** their boots before coming into the house.)

RIGHT: Mrs. Flanders **made** the boys, whose boots were muddy, *take off* their boots before coming into the house.



The verbs listed below are followed by a verb word or a present participle.

*hear, feel, see, watch, notice, observe*

1. The speaker could hear the audience *whisper/whispering*.
2. When they were at the seashore, they saw artists *paint/painting*.
3. It's interesting to watch construction workers *build/building* a foundation.
4. As they sat on the deck, they felt the wind *blow/blowing* on their faces.
5. Janet spent hours observing the children *play/playing*.
6. While he was exploring the area, he happened to notice workmen *install/installing* a microwave transmitter.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (He reported that he had noticed her ~~locked~~ the door before she left.)

RIGHT: He reported that he had noticed her *locking* (or *lock*) the door before she left.

*Catch, report, find* are followed by a present participle.

1. The police *caught* the thief *stealing* the diamond bracelet.
2. We found Peter in one of the dressing rooms *rehearsing* his lines.
3. The commentator *has just reported* a man *sitting* on the top of a flagpole.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (The photographer tried to catch the bird ~~feed~~ its young.)

RIGHT: The photographer tried to catch the bird *feeding* its young.

The causative *have* is followed by a verb word. The causative is used when the subject gets, or asks, or hires someone to do something for him.

Compare the two sentences below.

The Mendozas *are going to hire* an architect to design their house.

The Mendozas *are going to have* an architect design their house.

1. The police chief *had two of his men investigate* the complaint.
2. The instructor *plans to have an expert teach* the computer software course.
3. Since last September the theater manager *has had* handicapped students *work* in the theater.
4. The company *will have had* its consultants *test* the new products by next week.

---

NOTE: Sometimes a present participle, instead of a verb word, is used to emphasize a continuing action over a period of time.

---

1. The drama coach *had* the cast of the play *rehearsing all morning*.
2. By the time the bell rang, the teacher *had had* her students *writing sentences for three hours*.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Sydney forgot to have his secretary, who had just left, to ~~confirm~~ his appointments for the next day.)

RIGHT: Sydney forgot to have his secretary, who had just left, *confirm* his appointments for the next day.



- (wrong): (He had just had the waitress ~~locking~~ the back door when a customer came in the front door.)
- RIGHT: He had just had the waitress *lock* the back door when a customer came in the front door.

### Proposals

**Proposal verbs** are followed by verb words in *that* clauses. Proposal expressions contain *that* noun clauses and are used to suggest or require a certain procedure. These expressions are often used to emphasize or to state officially. The word *that* is sometimes implied.

ask (that)	suggest (that)	insist (that)
request (that)	advise (that)	urge (that)
propose (that)	demand (that)	prefer (that)
recommend (that)	require (that)	move (that) (parliamentary procedure)

Practice the proposal verbs above as in the following examples.

1. Clem's advisor **recommended (that)** Clem *take* fewer units next term.
2. The company **has suggested** we *write* to them for further information.
3. The manager **asks that** people in the theater *not smoke*.
4. At the opening of the concert, the conductor **urged that** everyone *be* willing to listen to the strange contemporary music.
5. Chandra said that she **preferred that** a driving instructor, rather than a friend, *teach* her to drive.
6. The monitor **should insist that** students *not talk* during the test.

Use *be* plus the *past participle* for the passive voice.

7. Lu **has demanded (that)** he *be told* about any schedule changes.
8. At the meeting, Mr. Simon **moved that** all decisions *be postponed*.
9. The controller **may propose that** production *be delayed* a month.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

- (wrong): (The administration requires that formal dress ~~is~~ worn for the presentation.)
- RIGHT: The administration requires that formal dress *be worn* for the presentation.
- (wrong): (Her friends insist she should come early.)

---

**NOTE:** No modals or auxiliaries may be used with the verb word.

---

RIGHT: Her friends insist she *come* early.

**Proposal clauses, like proposal verb expressions, are used to suggest or require a particular procedure. These clauses are followed by verb words in *that* clauses.**

It is important (that)	It is imperative (that)	There is a requirement (that)
It is essential (that)	I believe it's urgent (that)	He saw the notice (that)
It's necessary (that)	It's preferable (that)	There has been a motion (that)
We saw a proposal (that)	He plans to request (that)	The rule is (that)
He thinks it's vital (that)	It was suggested (that)	A recommendation was made (that)



1. There was a notice on the bulletin board that all students who need housing *go* to Room 742.
2. It's necessary *one make* reservations for that particular restaurant a week ahead of time.
3. He said that it was urgent he *see* the manager.
4. If she wishes to get the job, it's imperative she *get in touch* with Mr. Mohler at once.
5. There's a college regulation that applications for the fall *be filed* with the registrar before May.
6. A motion has been made that the meeting *be dismissed*.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (The speaker said that it was essential we ~~don't~~ interrupt him.)

RIGHT: The speaker said that it was essential we *not interrupt* him.

---

NOTE: Although *would rather* has the same meaning as *prefer*, do not use *would rather* in a proposal form. Use the past tense in the *that* clause.

---

(wrong): (I would rather that he ~~come~~ tonight.)

RIGHT: I would rather that he *came* tonight.

(wrong): (She would rather that he ~~not visit~~ her at this time.)

RIGHT: She would rather that he *didn't visit* her at this time.

Most words that are used in proposal forms may also be used in other, less formal, forms.

It is important to return their call.

He suggested attending the show.

She urged him to be careful of avalanches.

There is a notice from the county office to appear in court.

Be sure to use the customary form of the verb in *that* clauses that do not follow proposal verbs or clauses.

I hope that your friend wins the race.

He has decided that he will study abroad next year.

Delphine thinks that Manulis should buy the stereo with recording equipment.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Gordon hopes that Sheila ~~accept~~ his invitation.)

RIGHT: Gordon hopes that Sheila *accepts* his invitation.

(wrong): (He believes that the political prisoner ~~be released~~.)

RIGHT: He believes that the political prisoner *should be released*.

Carefully compare the verbal forms of the following. A few alternate forms are presented here for the first time.

He helped her get on the horse.

He helped her to get on the horse.

Jean doesn't need to make an appointment.

Jean need not make an appointment.

Jean need only come to the office and a counselor will speak to him.



He doesn't dare to challenge the expert.  
He dare not challenge the expert.

Would you mind (*or*: Do you mind) my opening the window?  
Would you mind if I opened the window?  
Do you mind if I open the window?

Would you please close the door?  
Would you mind closing the door?

I suggest going to a film.  
I suggest our going to a film.  
I suggest that we go to a film.  
Let's go to a film.

Rich prefers playing basketball to playing baseball.  
Rich prefers to play basketball than to play baseball.  
Rich prefers to play basketball rather than baseball.  
Rich prefers we play basketball rather than baseball.

### EXERCISE VI. 3.

Practice asking and answering the following questions. Answer in complete sentences.

1. Do you practice speaking English every day?
2. Did your roommate consent to cook every night?
3. Have your friends promised to visit you?
4. Did you let him use your telephone?
5. Does your car need repairing? (*or* to be repaired?)
6. Did she ask you not to tell anyone?
7. Did the instructor have you correct your own papers?
8. Did you refuse to do what she asked?
9. Did they encourage you to work hard?
10. Are you looking forward to having a vacation?
11. Do you mind your friend's smoking?
12. What do you suggest your instructor do?
13. Do you plan to spend your time hiking and swimming?
14. Have you suggested that your friend go with you?
15. Is it important that you be in class tomorrow?
16. Has he recommended that you apply early?
17. Did they appreciate your helping them?
18. Has your friend quit smoking?
19. Are you pleased to have passed the last test?
20. Do you miss being with your family?
21. Would you rather that that they didn't telephone you late at night?
22. Have you become used to getting up early?
23. What do you feel like doing?

### EXERCISE VI. 4.

In the following sentences, underline the correct form.

1. Harvey was asked what time he would be through (to rehearse) (rehearse) (rehearsing).



2. He no doubt regretted (to not be able) (not being able) (not able) to see Melanie when she was in Seattle.
3. They didn't feel like, perhaps because of the weather, (to go) (go) (going) to the baseball game.
4. The instructor would rather that we (didn't hand in) (don't hand in) (not hand in) a late paper.
5. Before she buys a new car, she's going to have her mechanic, a man she truly trusts, (looking it over) (to look it over) (look it over).
6. The counselor recommends, after examining the aptitude test, Mary (majoring) (major) (should major) in a scientific field.
7. The notification requested that everyone, with no exceptions (be) (being) (is) at the orientation.
8. The strong wind caused the fire, which apparently had been set by an arsonist, (to spread) (spread) (spreading) quickly across the field.
9. The professor let his students, much to their surprise, (opened) (open) (to open) their books (for find) (for finding) (to find) the correct answers.
10. Boris didn't mention (him receiving) (having been received) (his having received) an award, so we were surprised (to hear) (hearing) (to heard) about it.
11. Apparently, the other tenants didn't mind (me playing the piano) (my playing the piano) (me play the piano) until 11:00 P.M. last night.
12. The marine biologists have just found a whale on the beach (to have) (have) (having) difficulty (to breathe) (breathing) (to be breathing). Although they keep (trying) (to try) (try) to tow it out to sea, the whale refuses (remaining) (remain) (to remain) in deep water.
13. The young bride insisted on (that she be carried) (being carried) (to be carried) across the threshold by her new husband.
14. She's all out of breath. She appears (to have been running) (to be running) (to run).
15. It was fascinating (watch) (being watched) (to watch) the young men (surf) (to surf) (be surfing) on the high ocean waves.

### MIXED EXERCISE 7: PART A

Fill in the circled letters that represents the *correct* form. Be able to give a reason for your selection.

1. You can close your umbrella. The rain seems \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. to stop  
 B. to have been stopped  
 C. to have stopped  
 D. having stopped
2. Mr. Lara has several stores, \_\_\_\_\_? (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. doesn't he  
 B. has he  
 C. does he  
 D. don't he
3. Shawn said that he wasn't quite ready and that his hair \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. needed to comb  
 B. needs combing  
 C. needs to have combed  
 D. needed to be combed
4. After the fire had been put out, the firefighters recommended \_\_\_\_\_ an alarm device. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. the occupants' getting  
 B. them getting  
 C. the occupants' get  
 D. the occupants to get



5. How high did he force \_\_\_\_\_ ? (A B C D)  
 A. the horse jumping C. to jump the horse  
 B. the horse jump D. the horse to jump
6. Whenever the child's mother was out of sight, the child \_\_\_\_\_. (A B C D)  
 A. would cry C. cry  
 B. had been crying D. began cry
7. If she \_\_\_\_\_ come soon, they'll have to go without her. (A B C D)  
 A. didn't C. don't  
 B. won't D. doesn't
8. The manager insisted \_\_\_\_\_ by check. (A B C D)  
 A. they don't pay C. they not pay  
 B. that they shouldn't pay D. them not to pay
9. What kind of advice \_\_\_\_\_ to you? (A B C D)  
 A. has gave C. was gave  
 B. has been given D. he has given
10. Lack of understanding and communication \_\_\_\_\_ trouble between teenage children and their parents. (A B C D)  
 A. frequently causes C. frequently had been causing  
 B. is frequently causing D. causing

## MIXED EXERCISE 7: PART B

Fill in the circled letter that represents the *incorrect* form.

1. Isn't the family planning to move to Washington if Mr. Rivkin will be elected to office? (A B C D)  
 A B C D
2. Although it was very late when Mr. Zeng began doing the job, he managed, with his friend's assistance, finishing before the building was locked. (A B C D)  
 A B C D
3. In what country he told you that he had lived before he came to the United States? (A B C D)  
 A B C D
4. The Air Transportation Commission issued an order that all planes were to inspect within the following three months. (A B C D)  
 B C D A
5. Nancy did not like him working late every night; in fact, this situation made her feel lonely and neglected. (A B C D)  
 A B C D
6. In case you have been looking for your friend, he's in the typewriter room compose a letter to his parents to tell them that he won't be coming home for Thanksgiving this year. (A B C D)  
 A B C D



7. The mayor proposed that the police commission should immediately investigate the charges that had been made by some of the citizens in the community.   
 A B C D A B C D
8. Some of the discoveries that were described by writers in biblical times have been found by present day scientists to have been true.   
 A B C D A B C D
9. If a person should observe someone acting violently toward another person, he doesn't need become directly involved, but he ought to at least notify the police.   
 A B C D A B C D
10. Before one votes on the propositions, it's truly vital that he or she becomes familiar with the reasons for voting both for the proposition and against the proposition.   
 A B C D A B C D

Verbals	Meaning	Usage
Proposition	A statement or suggestion put forward for consideration or discussion.	The mayor proposed that the police commission should investigate the charges.
Should	A modal verb used to express obligation, advice, or a hypothetical situation.	The police commission should investigate the charges immediately.
Acting	A verb used to describe a person's behavior or actions.	He was acting violently toward the other person.
Discoveries	Things that are found or learned for the first time.	Some of the discoveries were described by writers in biblical times.
Charges	Accusations or claims against someone.	The mayor proposed that the police commission should investigate the charges.
Should observe	A phrase used to indicate that someone should watch or notice something.	If a person should observe someone acting violently...
Should become	A phrase used to indicate that someone should change or develop into something.	He doesn't need to become directly involved...
Should vote	A phrase used to indicate that someone should cast their ballot.	Before one votes on the propositions...
Should be familiar	A phrase used to indicate that someone should know or understand something.	It's truly vital that he or she becomes familiar with the reasons...
Should vote both for and against	A phrase used to indicate that someone should consider both sides of an issue.	He should vote both for the proposition and against the proposition.



# Seven

## PARTS OF SPEECH

### NOUNS

A *noun* is used as a subject, as an appositive (a further identification of the noun) and as the object of a verb, a preposition, or an infinitive.

*Mr. Allen* (subject), the art *teacher* (appositive), has just sold an oil *painting* (object of a verb) of a *scene* (object of a preposition) which appears to be a winter *landscape*. (object of an infinitive)

Nouns fall into two classifications, *countable* and *uncountable*. *Countable nouns* are those that can be pluralized and counted. Most nouns simply have an *s* added for the plural, but some are changed in other ways, as in the following examples.

deer-deer	man-men	wife-wives
dish-dishes	child-children	mouse-mice
baby-babies	tooth-teeth	parenthesis-parentheses
woman-women	goose-geese	potato-potatoes

The *mice* that were used in the experiment have died.

*Uncountable nouns* are those that are not pluralized. They are thought of as a *single unit*. Such nouns are abstract, mass, or collective in sense, as in the following examples.

Abstract		Mass		Collective	
advice	intelligence	gas	water	luggage	furniture
courage	information	sugar	cheese	jewelry	news
honesty	peace	rain	rice	food	money
fun	knowledge	sand	tea	jury	clothing
wealth	love			humankind	

The *luggage* is still on the plane.

*Clothes* is a plural word. *Clothing* is a singular word.

Warm *clothes* are a necessity for winter.

Warm *clothing* is a necessity for winter.



Some nouns end in *s* but are singular in meaning.

news	statistics	economics
mathematics	measles	home economics
United States	mumps	physics

The *news* last night *was* depressing.

Some nouns ending in *s* refer to only one item, but because the item has two parts, a plural verb follows.

pants	scissors	clippers
trousers	shears	binoculars
glasses	tweezers	

The *shears* which she uses to cut hair *are* very sharp.

---

NOTE: The term *pair of*, often used with these nouns, is singular. The *pair of shears* which she uses to cut hair *is* very sharp.

---

Some nouns can be used in either a singular or a plural sense without a change in form.

fish (salmon, trout, etc.)	buffalo	jury
deer (antelope, elk, etc.)	team	family
sheep	class	

There *were* many fish in the sea. The fish that he caught *was* delicious.

The *jury* is out of the room. The *jury* (members) *are* still disagreeing.

The *class* *was* interested in having an open house for parents.

The *class* (members) *have* brought their parents to the open house.

Nouns that are derived from adjectives are plural since the word *people* is implied. The article *the* must be used.

The *sick* (people) are less fortunate than the *healthy*.

There are more opportunities for the *educated* than there are for the *uneducated*.

When a noun is used as an adjective, do *not* use a plural form.

(wrong): (We bought two desks lamps yesterday.)

RIGHT: We bought two *desk* lamps yesterday.

When quantity-plus-noun is used as an adjective, do not use the plural form. (Notice the use of a hyphen in the two-word adjective.)

(wrong): (We had a twelve pages assignment yesterday.)

RIGHT: We had a *twelve-page* assignment yesterday.

Don't drop the *s* when a singular noun ending in *s* is used as an adjective.







Would you like *a sandwich*?

I am eating *an apple*.

You have *an hour* to finish the test. (The *h* is unvoiced.)

He bought *a history* book. (The *h* is voiced.)

**NOTE:** When *u* is the first syllable of a word, *a* rather than *an* is used: *a university, a united family, a unit*.

The *definite article, the*, is used before any noun (singular, plural, or uncountable) that is identified as **special or specific, a particular item or items**.

She thanked me for *the information*.

I used to enjoy *the chicken sandwiches* that my mother made me.

It was *the only photograph* that he had of his grandmother.

We didn't care for *the play* that we saw last night.

**Do not use an article with a plural or uncountable noun that is used in a general rather than in a specific sense.**

We have planted carrots in the garden this year.

She enjoys music of all kinds.

The company installed telephones in each office.

Would you prefer to drink milk or coffee?

Compare the following pairs:

His mother gave him a dime.

The dime which his mother gave him is in his pocket.

Although dimes are smaller than nickles, dimes are worth more.

She spent the dimes in her purse on telephone calls.

She admires honesty.

She admired the honesty of his speech.

**Use *a, an, or the* for single designations of uncountable nouns, such as *piece of, slice of, loaf of, cup of, box of, gallon of, teaspoon of*. Do not use *a, an* or a number directly before an uncountable noun.**

Shawn has bought *a piece of furniture* for his den.

(*not*: Shawn has bought *a new furniture* for his den.)

He has only *one gallon of gasoline* left.

(*not*: He has only *one gasoline* left).

Please give me *a teaspoon of sugar*.

(*not*: Please give me *a sugar*.)

**Use *the* with the superlative form of comparison.** (See Adjectives.)

Louella has *the least* interest in sports of all the students.



The city hall is *the tallest* building in town.

Use *the* before ordinal numbers (first, second, third, etc.). Ordinal numbers *precede* the noun.

I asked him the question for *the second* time.

That is *the fifth* game he has won.

Do not use *the* (or any other article) before nouns that are followed by cardinal numbers (one, two, three, etc.).

Go to *gate three*.

We are finished with *chapters two and three*.

Will you please turn to *page thirty*?

Use *a, an,* or *the* before hyphenated adjectives preceding singular nouns.

Last week the governor went on *a three-day* boating trip.

She is taking *the eight-mile* hike instead of *the fifteen-mile* hike.

Don handed in *an eleven-page* essay.

Use *the* before the names of specific countries, states, and cities which are officially identified by a preceding noun.

She lives in *the Republic of France*.

Our daughter thinks that *the state of Oregon* is beautiful.

There are many tall buildings in *the city of Chicago*.

Use *the* before the names of specific rivers, seas, canals, forests, deserts, and oceans.

Steamboats are used to transport people to various destinations along *the Mississippi River*.

*The Panama Canal* is an important shipping route.

A variety of cactus plants grows in *the Mojave Desert*.

Use *the* when the word *university* or *college* comes before the name.

Shelley attended *the University of California*, but her brother attended *Glendale College*.

Masumi has been studying music at *the College of Fine Arts*.

My brother graduated from *Harvard University*.

Do not use an article before names of streets, cities, states, parks, or possessive names.

They walked through *Central Park* yesterday.

I will meet you on *Montana Street* in front of *Joe's store*.

Are you going to *Paris* next summer?

Babs used to live in *North Dakota*.

Do not use an article before games such as baseball, golf, tennis.

Every Saturday they play *football*.

*Tennis* is her favorite sport.



When the words *school*, *church*, or *work* are referred to as regularly attended places, no article is used.

They go to *school* each day. (They attend *the school* on First Street.)  
 What time do you go to *work* in the morning?

When meals are referred to in a *general* sense, no article is used.

She met her friend for *lunch* yesterday.  
 They generally have *tea* at 4:00 P.M. every day.

When meals are referred to in a *specific* sense, use the article *the*.

We enjoyed *the dinner* which our hostess had prepared for us.

Use *the* for one or more of a countable group.

Two of *the policemen* wore civilian clothing.  
 Many of *the people* (*many people*) (*many of them*) waved.

*Some* and *a lot of* are used for uncountable and plural countable nouns.

Rosa has *a lot of knowledge* about car motors.  
 He owns *some* good books.  
 There are *a lot of roses* in the museum garden.

Use *the* with the words *past*, *present*, and *future* but *not* with the words *present times*, *past times*, and *future times*.

He has worked with the same firm from the time he was twenty to *the present* (or: *to the present time*).  
 Undoubtedly there will be exciting new inventions in *future times*.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Miss Ziv got two advices, one from her friend and one from me.)  
 \*\*\*\*\*

RIGHT: Miss Ziv got *two pieces of advice*, one from her friend and one from me.

(wrong): (He was placed in fifth level of English.)  
 \*\*\*\*\*

RIGHT: He was placed in *the fifth* level of English.

(wrong): ("It is a honor to be here," said his guest.)  
 \*\*

RIGHT: "It is *an honor* to be here," said his guest.

(wrong): (Have you seen good movie recently?)  
 \*\*\*\*\*

RIGHT: Have you seen *a good movie* recently?

(wrong): (Every day the Smiths eat the dinner at 6:00.)  
 \*\*\*\*\*

RIGHT: Every day the Smiths eat *dinner* at 6:00.

(wrong): (Next week he plans to look for the job.)  
 \*\*\*\*\*

RIGHT: Next week he plans to look for *a* job.

(wrong): (Please read the page two.)  
 \*\*\*\*\*

RIGHT: Please read *page two*.



(wrong): (The librarian removed one of reference books from shelf.)

RIGHT: The librarian removed one of the reference books from the shelf.

### EXERCISE VII. 1.

Fill in the blanks with *a, an, the*, or no article.

1. A few of \_\_\_\_\_ notices had been taken down before Jenny got there.
2. They told me that they had \_\_\_\_\_ respect for their employer.
3. He mentioned that \_\_\_\_\_ information he had been given was useful.
4. Benita enjoys wearing \_\_\_\_\_ jewelry.
5. For many people, \_\_\_\_\_ childhood was not a happy time.
6. This is \_\_\_\_\_ first time that the child has seen \_\_\_\_\_ elephant.
7. Her teacher was born in \_\_\_\_\_ town of Williamson.
8. She is wearing \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful red dress her mother bought her.
9. It takes \_\_\_\_\_ courage to begin a new life in a strange country.
10. She said \_\_\_\_\_ stories he told her were about \_\_\_\_\_ years he had worked in \_\_\_\_\_ country of Australia.
11. He purchased \_\_\_\_\_ new pair of reading glasses.
12. Have you finished \_\_\_\_\_ chapter eight of \_\_\_\_\_ novel that we're reading in our class this month?
13. Can you lend me \_\_\_\_\_ pencil so that I can finish \_\_\_\_\_ test?
14. She was so tired that she took \_\_\_\_\_ two-hour nap.

### EXERCISE VII. 2.

There is at least one error in each sentence. Underline the error (or errors) and correct them.

1. She asked the waitress for three-minutes egg.
2. It is a third time that I have heard that news.
3. Have you ever been on the campus of University of Colorado?
4. I have eaten the raw fish several times.
5. He was a honorable man who truly cared about people.
6. The teacher asked us to turn to the page thirty-four.
7. I would like to call you. Do you have the telephone?
8. That zoo has largest animal in the world.
9. Which do you generally prefer to eat, the fish or the chicken?
10. The house was advertised as having hardwood floors and security system.
11. Mrs. Wohl still has two childs living at home; the others are in college.
12. One of hospitals is seeking mental health professional.
13. Peter and Susan went to the Fred's restaurant last night.
14. My favorite fabric is the cotton.
15. Behind a house in which he lives, there are a lot of orange tree; therefore he can drink the glass of orange juice every day.
16. Mr. Aronovitch usually carries only one luggage on his trips.
17. Sandy needs to have two typewriter's keys repaired.
18. Pacific Ocean borders west coast of the United States.
19. When Janet went to the market, she bought the lettuce, the apples, and the fish.
20. Every Sunday, the two gentlemen can be seen playing the chess.
21. Peace-keeping force included troops from several countries.
22. Why don't you ask for an information about train schedules?
23. Marco Polo was an explorer who came from city of Venice.



- 24. She seemed to be only one who enjoyed statistic class.
- 25. Some think that life was easier in the past times than it is in the present times.

## VERBS

Verbs are used to describe an action or a state of being. They can be in the active voice or in the passive voice. Most action verbs are regular, that is, *ed* is added to form the past tense and the past participle.

call      called      called

To review principal parts of irregular verbs, see the Supplement. The principal parts of the verbs listed below are particularly confusing to students. *Transitive verbs* are verbs that take an object. *Intransitive verbs* do not take an object.

Present	Past	Transitive		Present	Past	Intransitive	
		Past Part.	Present Part.			Past Part.	Present Part.
lay	laid	laid	laying	lie	lay	lain	lying
raise	raised	raised	raising	rise	rose	risen	rising
set	set	set	setting	sit	sat	sat	sitting

Compare the transitive and intransitive verbs in the sentences below.

- When he came home, he *lay* on the bed. (intransitive)
- When she came home, she *laid* her books on the table. (transitive)

- The sun *has risen* over the mountains.
- For many years Farmer Brown *has raised* corn.

- Because there were no chairs, Don *sat* on the floor.
- When dinner was ready, Maureen *set* the plates on the table.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Last year the rate of inflation ~~raised~~ by 20 percent.)

RIGHT: Last year the rate of inflation *rose* by 20 percent.

(wrong): (Susie's cat has been ~~laying~~ there for several hours.)

RIGHT: Susie's cat *has been lying* there for several hours.

Only transitive verbs can be used in the passive voice.

(wrong): (The unconscious girl was ~~lain~~ on the bed.)

RIGHT: The unconscious girl *was laid* on the bed.

(wrong): (The white coat is ~~belonged~~ to Muriel.)

RIGHT: The white coat *belongs* to Muriel.



The following pairs of verbs are often confused with each other.

affect-effect	tell-speak
hung-hanged (past tense)	lend-borrow
bring-take	used to-be used to
leave-let	suppose-be supposed to

Study the following groups of sentences to see how these verbs are used.

Smog affects plant and animal life. (*affect*: to influence physically or emotionally)  
 Scientists have effected a cure for many diseases. (*effect* (verb): to produce)  
 The drug had a bad effect on her. (*effect*: (noun) a result)

He hung the picture on the wall. (clothing, pictures, etc. are *hung*)  
 In the days of the early Western settlement, cattle thieves were sometimes hanged. (People are *hanged*, i.e. put to death by suspending by the neck.)

Dan brought us some lovely flowers. (One *brings* when one comes to a place.)  
 When she left, she took a sweater with her. (One *takes* when one leaves from a place.)

Stu leaves water for his dog when he goes to work. (*leave*: to cause something to remain)  
 He left the room. (*leave*: to depart)  
 Mrs. Callihan let her daughter watch the program. (*let*: to permit)

He told us that he was an optometrist. (*tell*: to inform someone)  
 She will speak about communication. (*speak*: to express ideas orally; it is *not* a reporting verb)

Sue has just lent Robert her pen. (*lend*: to give for temporary use)  
 Dana borrowed a dollar from Fred. (*borrow*: to receive for temporary use)

We used to play the game "Jacks" when we were children. (*used to*: in the past but not anymore)  
 They are used to the noise; it doesn't bother them. (*be used to*: to be accustomed to)

Tom used the mail order service for his business last year. (*use*: to make use of)  
 Bob isn't here. I suppose he has gone home. (*suppose*: to assume)  
 The auditors are supposed to check the accounts. (*be supposed to*: should)  
 Suppose you found some treasure. What would you do? (*suppose*: to imagine)

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Are you going to borrow her your car?)

RIGHT: Are you going to *lend* her your car?

(wrong): (She supposed to meet me at nine o'clock.)

RIGHT: She *is supposed* to meet me at nine o'clock.

(wrong): (Patty hanged her new dress in the closet.)

RIGHT: Patty *hung* her new dress in the closet.

(wrong) (Some of the fish have been effected by the chemicals.)

RIGHT: Some of the fish have been *affected* by the chemicals.



Two-Word Verbs

Many idioms are composed of verb-preposition combinations. They are sometimes called "two-word verbs." Some two-word verbs may be separated, in which case the object may be placed between the verb and the preposition.

John *filled out* the application.  
 John *filled* the application *out*.  
 John *filled it out*. (not: John filled out it.)

Other two-word verbs may not be separated.

I *came across* an old letter. (not: I came an old letter across.)

---

**NOTE:** Idioms and two-word verbs are explained and demonstrated in the Supplement. The two-word verbs that are preceded by the initials N.S. (nonseparable) may not be separated; therefore, the object must come after the preposition.

---

Verbs Followed by Indirect Objects

An indirect object refers to the one to whom something is given or for whom something is done.

He gave a book to me. (*book* is the direct object)  
 He gave me a book. (*me* is the indirect object)  
 (wrong): (He gave to me a book.) The prepositional phrase must follow the direct object.

The following verbs are frequently followed by an indirect object:

- |       |       |
|-------|-------|
| tell  | offer |
| give  | show  |
| sell  | hand  |
| buy   | mail  |
| bring | lend  |
| send  | read  |
| make  | write |

Practice using the above verbs as in the following examples.

I sent Harry a letter.  
 She told her child a story.  
 Consuela made her husband a sweater.  
 Would you do me a favor? (*Do a favor* is idiomatic.)

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Consuela made for her husband a sweater.)  
 RIGHT: Consuela made *her husband* a sweater.  
 RIGHT: Consuela made a sweater *for her husband*.



**EXERCISE VII. 3.**

Review the irregular verbs in the Supplement.

**EXERCISE VII. 4.**

Review the two-word verbs in the section on Idioms.

**EXERCISE VII. 5.**

Underline the correct verb in the parentheses.

1. The English teacher asked the students (to bring, to take) their compositions to school the next day.
2. As soon as he (lay, laid) his head on the pillow, he fell asleep.
3. A question (was risen, was raised) as to the budget director's credibility.
4. She (hung up, hanged up) her coat as soon as she entered the house.
5. Akiko has knitted (for her boyfriend, her boyfriend) some socks for his birthday.
6. Microfilm (uses, is used) to photograph papers and documents.
7. Lloyd is tired; he (is lying, is laying) on the sofa.
8. Would you please (borrow, lend) me your dictionary?
9. As she (come, came) toward him, she (began, begin) to laugh.
10. When her mother was ill, Diane (took the responsibility over, took over the responsibility) of caring for the children.
11. After the new books had been (lain, laid) on the library table, they were sorted by the librarians.

**EXERCISE VII. 6.**

Fill in the blanks with the past tense and the past perfect of each verb.

become	_____	_____	fall	_____	_____	bleed	_____	_____
bite	_____	_____	lay	_____	_____	choose	_____	_____
lie	_____	_____	keep	_____	_____	find	_____	_____
drink	_____	_____	hold	_____	_____	drive	_____	_____
build	_____	_____	know	_____	_____	rise	_____	_____
forgive	_____	_____	lend	_____	_____	speak	_____	_____
go	_____	_____	lose	_____	_____	take	_____	_____
buy	_____	_____	grow	_____	_____	raise	_____	_____
stick	_____	_____	shake	_____	_____	sit	_____	_____
fight	_____	_____	blow	_____	_____	win	_____	_____

**ADJECTIVES**

An *adjective* describes (modifies) a noun or a gerund. Adjectives do not change in gender or number.

soft pillows; excellent essay; interesting information; tall women

The usual order of adjectives is demonstrated in the following example.

general  
 number description size color type material  
 Sam owns two handsome large white Texan leather hats.



## Present and Past Participles as Adjectives

The *present participle* before a noun describes what the noun is actively doing.

*swaying* trees  
*moving* train  
*boiling* water  
*sinking* ship

The *present participle* also describes the general use of the noun or what the noun customarily does.

*washing* machine  
*dining* table  
*growing* children  
*landing* gear

The *past participle* describes what happened to the noun (usually earlier).

*baked* potato  
*signed* contract  
*injured* hand  
*frozen* meat  
*lost* puppy

The use of the present and past participle of words such as those listed below is sometimes confusing.

amusing-amused	exciting-excited
interesting-interested	confusing-confused
boring-bored	discouraging-discouraged

The *present participle* of these words describes a **judgment or an opinion** (how a situation appears to someone).

The book is *interesting*. or: It's an *interesting* book. (in my opinion)  
 (wrong): (The book is interested. It's an interested book.)

They thought the exhibit was *boring*. The *boring* exhibit did not hold their attention.  
 The question was *confusing*. It was a *confusing* question.

The *past participle* of these words describes how the subject itself has been influenced or affected by an outside force or stimulus.

Yong Lee is *interested* in the book. (The book is the external stimulus.)  
 (wrong): (Yong Lee is interesting in the book.)

Sascha was *confused* about the directions.  
 Lana felt *embarrassed* about the situation.



---

**NOTE:** The adjective *open* rather than the past participle *opened* is used to modify nouns. The window is *open* and the door is *closed*. A bird flew in through the *open* window. (Passive: The window was *opened* by the janitor.)

---

*Present or past participles* often replace clauses that describe nouns. The participle comes before or after the noun and is set off by commas.

Compare:

Becky, *who was crying*, waved good-bye to her friends. (adjective clause)

Becky, *crying*, waved good-bye to her friends. or: *Crying*, Becky waved good-bye to her friends. (present participle as adjective)

When the participle is combined with other words, the group of words is called *an adjective phrase* or a *modifying adjective phrase*. (See "Using Participles" in Section VIII.)

*Crying softly*, Becky waved good-bye to her friends.

Becky, *crying softly*, waved good-bye to her friends.

*Forgiven by its master*, the dog wagged its tail.

The dog, *forgiven by its master*, wagged its tail.

#### Adjectives After State of Being Verbs and Linking Verbs

Adjectives are used after some form of a *be* verb or a linking verb. The following **linking verbs** are treated like *be* verbs in that they link or connect the adjective to the noun.

seem	taste
sound	become
feel	get
smell	grow
remain	turn
appear	

(*Get, grow* and *turn* mean, "become.")

1. Jane **is** tired.
2. Jane **seems** tired.
3. Jane **feels** tired.
4. The roses in her garden **were** beautiful.
5. The music from the new stereo **sounds** wonderful.
6. The children **grew** restless during the film.
7. His ideas **appear** to be true and boring.
8. This chilled drink which she has given us **tastes** bitter.
9. Some employees **are becoming** confused about the retirement policy.

#### Adjectives of Emotion Followed by Adverbial *That* Clauses

*That* clauses are often used after adjectives and past participles that express emotion.

He is **happy** that his application has been accepted.



She was *concerned* that she might not qualify for the diving event.

Below is a list of common adjectives and past participles that can be used with *that* clauses.

afraid	excited	satisfied
angry	glad	shocked
annoyed	happy	sorry
ashamed	hopeful	sure
concerned	pleased	surprised
depressed	positive	thrilled
disappointed	proud	upset
disgusted	sad	worried

### Comparison of Adjectives

The comparative form of an adjective or an adverb contrasts (or compares) *two*. Think of the two as two sides; there may be one or more on one side and one or more on the other side. Use *than* in the comparative form.

Lin is *taller than* his brother Wang.

This dress is *more attractive than* the other dresses.

The members of the green team seemed *stronger than* the members of the red team.

The superlative form of an adjective describes the one that stands out from a group of three or more. The article *the* must precede the superlative adjective. Use *of* or *in* in the superlative form.

Raymond has *the largest* stamp collection *of* the collectors.

Last night's play was *the most exciting* in the series.

### Comparison of Regular Adjectives

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
One-syllable words:	tall	taller	the tallest
Two-syllable words ending in <i>y, er, ow, le</i>	pretty clever yellow stable	prettier cleverer yellower stabler	the prettiest the cleverest the yellowest the stabliest
All other words of two or more syllables	careful intelligent	more careful more intelligent	the most careful the most intelligent

1. Our classroom is sunnier than the one across the hall.
2. Mr. Cho was the cleverest man she had ever met.
3. The Greek philosophers may have been the most influential of all the philosophers.
4. Su Ling appears to be more responsive than her sister.

Sometimes the full comparative or superlative phrase is only implied.

Today's test is more difficult. (*implied: than yesterday's test*)

I buy fruit at the open market because it tastes the best. (*of all*)



Sometimes a comparative adjective or adverb refers to a single subject which is compared to itself.

Willie looks happier today. (than he did yesterday)  
Since it has been repaired, the machine works more efficiently.

Sometimes double comparatives are used. Notice the similarity in structure.

*The deeper* the roots are, *the stronger* the tree is.  
*The longer* she practiced, *the more accurately* she typed.  
*The higher* the mountain (is), *the harder* (it is) to climb.

Sometimes a prepositional phrase expressing "of the two" is used in the comparative form. The article *the* must precede the comparative adjective or adverb.

I think this painting is *the more interesting of the two*.  
Unquestionably, *of the two students*, Asa works *the harder*.

#### Comparison of Irregular Adjectives

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
much	more	the most
many	more	the most
little	less	the least
good	better	the best
bad	worse	the worst

- Mary had *the worst* case of measles of all the children.
- His recent art works seem to have *less* appeal than the earlier ones.
- Don't you think her pronunciation is *better* than it was?
- Jed had *the least* difficulty of all the students figuring out the problem.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (The Himalayas in Central Asia are ~~the most highest~~ mountains in the world.)

RIGHT: The Himalayas in Central Asia are *the highest* mountains in the world.

(wrong): (The view from the top of the hill was even more lovelier than the view at sea level.)

RIGHT: The view from the top of the hill was even *lovelier* than the view at sea level.

(wrong): (Of the two courses, Tomasa thought that geology was ~~the most fascinating~~.)

RIGHT: Of the two courses, Tomasa thought that geology was *the more fascinating*.

(wrong): (The child had ~~the worse~~ case of measles the doctor had ever seen.)

RIGHT: The child had *the worst* case of measles the doctor had ever seen.

(wrong): (Following the instructions on how to assemble the toy was ~~confused~~.)

RIGHT: Following the instructions on how to assemble the toy was *confusing*.

(wrong): (Kunya has a rare green beautiful jade ring.)

RIGHT: Kunya has a beautiful rare green jade ring.

(wrong): (Between them, Dr. McCaffery has ~~the greatest~~ insight.)

RIGHT: Between them, Dr. McCaffery has *the greater* insight.



(wrong): (Among the inventors at the convention, Mr. Ito seemed ~~cleverest~~.)

RIGHT: Among the inventors at the convention, Mr. Ito seemed *the cleverest*.

(wrong): (The World Trade Center is taller ~~as~~ the Empire State building.)

RIGHT: The World Trade Center is taller *than* the Empire State building.

The phrases *the same as*, *as — as*, *similar to*, and *different from* are used in comparing equality and inequality in adjectives.

Brazil has about *the same* amount of coal *as* Norway.

Albert's essay was *as* amusing, if not more amusing, *as* Dana's (not: ~~than~~ Dana's).

The architecture in London is very *different from* the architecture in New York City.

Jane's ideas were *similar to* Albert's.

The following sentences illustrate how **indefinite adjectives and pronouns** are used in comparative form. Note that *any* becomes *any other*, *someone* becomes *someone else*, *all* becomes *all (of) the other*, *somewhere* becomes *somewhere else* and so on. When *prefer* is the verb, the preposition *to* is placed before the second noun or gerund. *Would rather* is also commonly used in comparative forms.

He prefers fishing *to any other activity* (not: ~~than~~ any other activity).

Eric and Ida would rather visit Hawaii *than anywhere else* (not: ~~than~~ anywhere).

In the following sentences, **the comparative form shows increasing degree**.

As summer approached, the days seemed *longer and longer*.

Gradually, he became *more and more* upset over the noise.

*More* is also used in a **noncomparative sense**.

Would you like *more* milk? (additional milk)

She asked for *more* time to complete the test.

The following adjectives are **conclusive in meaning** and therefore they cannot be used in comparative forms: *unique*, *perfect*, *pregnant*, *fatal*, *dead*, *empty*.

(wrong): (This rose is ~~more perfect~~ than the other rose.)

RIGHT: This rose is *perfect*.

### Adjectives With Countable and Uncountable Nouns

Use *much*, *a great deal of*, or *a lot of* with *uncountable nouns*. (*Much* is usually used only with negative verbs.) Use *many* and *a lot of* with *countable nouns*. (*A lot of* is usually used only with positive verbs.)

The meteorologist wasn't able to give *much information* about the hurricane.

Mrs. Greenberg has *a great deal of knowledge* about plants.

They had *a lot of fun* playing croquet.

There aren't *many eggs* left in the refrigerator.

Fedora and Harry have *a lot of friends* (or: *many friends*, or: *a great many friends*).



*More* may be used with both countable and uncountable nouns.

At one time there were *more* trains in the United States than there are today. (or: *many more* trains) (or: *a great many more* trains)

There appeared to be *more* fruit on the ground than on the tree. (or: *much more* fruit)

Use *little*, *less*, and *the least* with *uncountable nouns*. Use *few*, *fewer*, *the fewest* with *countable nouns*. The word *amount* is used with an *uncountable noun*, whereas the word *number* is used with a *countable noun*.

He has *little respect* for most politicians.

She has *less difficulty* in science than she does in English.

Of all the teachers, Mr. Font gave *the least homework* (or: *the least amount of homework*).

There were *few imported cars* in the showroom.

Some companies offer good insurance rates to those who have had *the fewest violations* (or: *the fewest number of violations*).

Jim feels that *the fewer possessions* he has, the better.

There is a difference between *little* and *a little*, and between *few* and *a few*. *Little* means *not much*; *few* means *not many*. *A little* and *a few* mean "some."

I can't make a pie because there is *little sugar*. (not much sugar)

There is *a little sugar* for your coffee. (some sugar)

She doesn't seem very friendly; she has *few friends*. (not many friends)

Although Lida has been here only a short time, she has already made *a few friends*. (some friends)

---

**NOTE:** When *only* is added, the article *a* must be used.

There is *only a little gas* left in the car.

*Only a few tickets* are left for the show.

---

Use the following adjectives with both *countable* and *uncountable nouns*: *other* (meaning "additional"); *the other* (meaning "the second of two"); *some* (use in positive statements); *any* (use in negative statements and in questions).

There is *some dressing* in the salad.

*Some people* enjoy baseball and *other people* enjoy football.

Janet couldn't find *any books* on child care in the bookstore.

The red tie is attractive but *the other tie* is even more attractive.

Do you have *any change* for a dollar?

Use the following adjectives with *singular countable nouns*: *each*, *every*, *either*, *neither*, *another* (meaning "one more").

*Each year* more is learned about the universe.

The librarian has catalogued *every book* in the fiction section.

I enjoy *either one*, the red wine or the white wine.

*Neither course* was what Antonio had in mind.

Would you care for *another cup* of tea? (not: other cup of tea)



Additional Rules About Adjectives

Use a plural form of measure with adjectives and a singular form of measure with nouns.

The table is *three-feet wide*. It is a *three-foot wide table*.  
 The hike was *four and a half miles*. We took a *four-and-a-half mile hike*.  
 My friend Mary is a *five-foot-two-inch tall woman*. She's *five-feet-two-inches tall*.

The word *helpless* applies to people and animals. The word *useless* usually applies to things and ideas but occasionally can also apply to people.

The animal, trapped under a fallen tree, appeared *helpless*. (powerless)  
 The police tried to revive the man but it was *useless*. (of no value)  
 In any kind of an emergency situation, her cousin seems *useless*. (ineffectual; incapable)

Adjectives referring to color of hair are: *red-haired, black-haired, brown-haired, light-haired*, and so forth.

No one seemed to know the *red-haired man* talking to the blonde girl.

The adjectives below illustrate some common suffixes (endings).

helpful	childish	numerous
useless	sensible	dramatic
political	comfortable	monetary
attentive	healthy	essential
dependent	crowded	religious
militant	boring	

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

- (wrong): (Since she didn't have *many bread*, she couldn't make sandwiches.)
- RIGHT: Since she didn't have *much bread*, she couldn't make sandwiches.
- (wrong): (The farmer had a *great deal* of potatoes that he couldn't sell.)
- RIGHT: The farmer had *a great many* potatoes that he couldn't sell.
- (wrong): (Mrs. Blake has had *small opportunity* to travel.)
- RIGHT: Mrs. Blake has had *little opportunity* to travel.
- (wrong): (Please serve *few kinds* of drinks to our guests.)
- RIGHT: Please serve *a few* kinds of drinks to our guests.
- (wrong): (Of the two chairs which one do you prefer, the gray chair or *other chair*.)
- RIGHT: Of the two chairs which one do you prefer, the gray chair or *the other chair* (or: the other one).
- (wrong): (The city of Chicago had trouble getting rid of its *large amount* of rats.)
- RIGHT: The city of Chicago had trouble getting rid of its *large number* of rats.
- (wrong): (He said that he didn't have *some interest* in politics.)
- RIGHT: He said that he didn't have *any interest* in politics.
- (wrong): (He complained that he had *much more* problems than he used to.)
- RIGHT: He complained that he had *many more* (or: *a great many more*) problems than he used to.



- (wrong): (Although the captain tried everything possible, he was ~~useless~~ to save the drowning man.)
- RIGHT: Although the captain tried everything possible, he was *helpless* to save the drowning man.
- (wrong): (Presumably there are ~~less~~ diseases in the frigid zones than there are in the torrid zones.)
- RIGHT: Presumably there are *fewer* diseases in the frigid zones than there are in the torrid zones.
- (wrong): (They would rather live in Wyoming than ~~anywhere~~ in the United States.)
- RIGHT: They would rather live in Wyoming than *anywhere else* in the United States.
- (wrong): (He thought his method was more efficient than ~~all~~ the methods.)
- RIGHT: He thought his method was more efficient than *all the other* methods.
- (wrong): (On the top of the ~~seven-and-a third-foot~~ pole was a birdhouse.)
- RIGHT: On the top of the *seven-and-a third-foot* pole was a birdhouse.

## ADVERBS

An adverb describes (modifies) an action verb, an adjective, or another adverb. Adverbs are used to refer to manner, time, quality, and quantity.

Compare the use of adjectives and adverbs in the following sentences.

He is slow.

He *works slowly*. (describes an action verb)

She appears to be a rapid typist.

She appears to be an *extremely rapid* typist. (describes an adjective)

She types *extremely rapidly*. (describes an adverb)

Rahman's family is Rahman's primary interest.

Rahman is *primarily* interested in engineering.

Also: Rahman is *primarily* an engineer. or: *Primarily*, Rahman is an engineer.

---

NOTE: Used in the same manner as *primarily* are the adverbs *chiefly*, *basically*, *mainly*, *principally*, *fundamentally*, also, *ordinarily* and *normally* (usually).

---

*Principally*, he seems to be an honorable man.

Teresa was *basically* sensitive to those around her.

Dr. Kim is a mathematician *mainly*.

*Ordinarily* he is at home, but last week he had to go to Cleveland.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Although Terry sometimes works as a plumber, he is ~~chief~~ an engineer.)

RIGHT: Although Terry sometimes works as a plumber, he is *chiefly* an engineer.

Some adjectives and adverbs have the same form.



fast	late
early	high
hard	enough

Compare:

She is a *fast* runner.  
She runs *fast*.

He was *early*.  
He arrived *early*.

There was *enough* food for everyone.  
Everyone had *enough*.

**Adverbs (not adjectives) modify present and past participles.**

Mr. Papadopoulos is *gradually learning* to operate the computer.  
*Rapidly recovering* from his illness, Reuvan was able to do a little work.  
Loved by all who knew him, the coach was *deeply missed*.  
*Proudly sponsored* by a federation of hospitals, the programs on nutrition have been educational to all.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Careless written, the composition had to be done over.)  
XXXXXXXXXX

RIGHT: *Carelessly* written, the composition had to be done over.

(wrong): (Easy finding his way, he reached his destination early.)  
XXXXXXX

RIGHT: *Easily* finding his way, he reached his destination early.

### Comparison of Adverbs

#### Comparison of Regular Adverbs

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
softly	more softly	the most softly
beautifully	more beautifully	the most beautifully
often	more often	the most often
soon	sooner	the soonest
hard	harder	the hardest

#### Comparison of Irregular Adverbs

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
well	better	the best
badly	worse	the worst
little	less	the least
much	more	the most



Below are examples of both **regular and irregular adverbs** in the positive, comparative, and superlative degree.

1. The professor suggested that each student go over the material *carefully*.
2. Tom was *more easily* convinced than Pete to vote for the proposition.
3. *Slowly but surely*, Sydney found a solution to the problem.
4. It was *the most poorly* constructed building that he had ever seen.
5. He has *less* than most people but he seems to enjoy himself *the most*.
6. Mrs. Parnell is *the hardest* working woman that I know.
7. Of the two pianists, Francie plays *the more musically*.
8. Having finished his work *quickly*, Charles hurried home.
9. *Swiftly*, the tiger sprang at the zebra.
10. The house, *brightly* painted an orange color, draws attention from those passing by.
11. Entering the room *silently*, Miss Izen sat down unnoticed by anyone.
12. Zev played *worse* today than yesterday.
13. She listened carefully but she didn't speak *much*.
14. The buildings deteriorated *more* quickly than anyone had anticipated (or: *much more* quickly).

**Best** is sometimes used as an adverb with past participles.

The composer Georges Bizet is *best remembered* for his opera *Carmen*.

**Best** sometimes means "most advisable."

It is *best* not to dwell on past mistakes.

The following sentences illustrate the comparison of equality and inequality in adverbs.

1. Mr. Huxley speaks French *as fluently as* Mr. Cousteau.
2. She tried to express her feelings *as sincerely as* she could.
3. The legislator debated the issue *as effectively as* he could.
4. The train appeared to be going *as fast as*, perhaps even faster than, a plane.
5. The pump doesn't work *as well as* it did.
6. An advertisement for a hair product used to proclaim that blondes had *twice as much* fun as brunettes (not: two times as much fun).
7. Claude got a good grade but he had done *half as much* work as the others.
8. The country of India has almost *three times as many* people as the United States (not: three times more people than).

#### Other Adverbs

##### "Enough"

Place *enough* after an adjective and an adverb but before a noun.

Yeon Soo doesn't feel *ill enough* (sufficiently ill) to remain home.

The manager spoke *loudly enough* for everyone to hear.

There are *enough* books for everyone in the class.

There is *more than enough* food to go around. (*more than enough* means "in excess of an adequate supply")



**"Such" and "So"**

*Such* refers to a noun and *so* refers to an adjective. Both are followed by a *that* clause, written or implied.

It was *such* a cold *day* that we decided to stay inside.

It was *so* cold, we decided to stay inside. (or: It was *so* cold a day)

**Other Forms With "Such" and "So"**

He told us *so* strange a story that we could hardly believe it.

As we were looking at antique automobiles, Pat said he owned *such* an automobile. (an automobile such as that or similar to that one)

The president thought the problem *so* serious (thought that the problem was so serious) that he discussed it on television.

He left early because he was *so* uncomfortable. (implied: so uncomfortable that he didn't wish to remain)

**"So" and "Such" with "Little," "Few," "Much," "Many"**

He had *so* little education that he had difficulty getting a job.

He had *such* a small amount of education that he had difficulty getting a job.

*So* few of the rare bird's eggs had hatched that the scientist was disappointed.

*Such* a few number of the rare bird's eggs had hatched that the scientist was disappointed.

There was *so* much data that it took a long time to sort it out.

There was *such* a large amount of data that it took a long time to sort it out.

The lecturer was asked *so* many questions, he couldn't answer them all.

The lecturer was asked *such* a large number of questions, he couldn't answer them all.

**"Very" and "Too" with "Little," "Few," "Much," "Many"**

*Very* means "a high degree." "*Too*" means "excessively" and must be followed by an infinitive, or an infinitive must be implied.

Ronit enjoyed the play *very* much.

He complained that he had eaten *too* much. (or: *much* too much) (or: *far* too much)

**NOTE:** *Too much to be comfortable* is implied.

After his date, Ralph had *very* little money left.

He had *too* little (or: *far* too little) money to buy a new battery.

Mr. Berman had *very* few customers yesterday.

Selma has *too* few credits to graduate.

One day the earth may have *too* many (or: *far* too many) people to sustain.

Ned didn't have *very* much fun at the party but Troy had a lot of fun.



---

**NOTE:** *Very much* and *very many* followed by a noun are usually used in a negative context. *Much* is also generally used in negative sentences. Compare:

We learned *many* good ideas at the workshop.  
 There weren't *very many* people at the concert.  
 Some days there is *a lot of* smog in the air but today there isn't *very much* smog.  
 There is *a lot of* difference between the two states.  
 There *isn't much* difference between the two opinions.

**Additional use of *Most* and *Much***

*Most* is sometimes used instead of *very*.

The Everglades in Florida are *most* (*very*) interesting.  
 That dress is *most* becoming to you.

*Much* is sometimes used instead of *a lot*.

We must hurry because there is *much* to do.  
*Much* has been said on that particular subject.

**NOTE:** Don't use *too*, *so*, or *real* instead of *very*.

(wrong): (This car needs repairing; it doesn't run too (so) well.)

RIGHT: This car needs repairing; it doesn't run *very* well.

(wrong): (Javier did real well on the test.) *Real* is an adjective, and means "not artificial."

RIGHT: Javier did *very* well on the test.

---

**Farther and Further:** *Farther* refers to distance. *Further* refers to a continuance or to an additional amount.

Santa Barbara is *farther* from Los Angeles than Ventura.  
 After lunch, Dr. Moore spoke *further* on the subject of motivation.  
 Tony needs *further* experience in public speaking.

**Quite and Pretty:** Adverbs *quite* and *pretty* mean "to a large degree." (These words are not used in this sense in the negative.)

This essay is *quite* good.  
 Miss Saunders has been able to rent a *pretty* large apartment.

---

**NOTE:** *Quite* with a negative means "not completely."

---

Dinner isn't *quite* ready.  
 Jean wasn't *quite* sure what had happened to his friend.

**Somewhat and Rather:** Adverbs *somewhat* and *rather* mean "to some degree," "more or less."

Mr. Minassian has completed his business and he's *rather* anxious to return home.  
 The letter, written in pencil, was *somewhat* difficult to read.



---

**NOTE:** Don't use *kind of* or *sort of* instead of *somewhat* or *rather*. *Kind of* and *sort of* mean "the type of," and precede a noun.

---

(wrong): (She thought the assignment was ~~sort of~~ confusing.) (kind of)

RIGHT: She thought the assignment was *somewhat* (rather) confusing.

RIGHT: What kind of test were you given?

**Almost, Nearly, Just About:** *Almost*, *nearly*, and *just about* mean "not yet or fully, but close to completion."

Majorie was *almost* finished with her term paper.

The boy was *nearly* drowned by the huge wave.

When we stopped to pick her up, she was *just about* ready.

---

**NOTE:** Don't use *most* instead of *almost*, *nearly*, or *just about*. *Most* means "the majority."

---

(wrong): (~~Most~~ all of the students passed the course.)

RIGHT: *Almost all* of the students passed the course.

RIGHT: *Most of the students* passed the course.

**Anymore and Yet:** *Anymore* means "no longer." *Yet* means "still" and "up to now."

The Alford's don't attend the dances *anymore*.

The Alford's *no longer* attend the dances.

(wrong): (The Alford's don't attend the dances ~~yet~~.)

Sylvia has *yet* to be paid for the many services she has rendered.

Sylvia hasn't *yet* been paid. (*Also:* Sylvia hasn't been paid *yet*.)

*Avoid the following kinds of errors:*

(wrong): (~~Physical~~ tired after two games of golf, Ken lay on the grass.)

RIGHT: *Physically* tired after two games of golf, Ken lay on the grass.

(wrong): (Some chickens lay much more eggs as other chickens.)

RIGHT: Some chickens lay *many more* eggs than do others.

(wrong): (My hometown is twice more populated than it used to be.)

RIGHT: My hometown is *twice as* populated as it used to be.

(wrong): (Enrique works slower than the other technicians, but he is particular conscientious.)

RIGHT: Enrique works *more slowly* than the other technicians, but he is *particularly* conscientious.

(wrong): (Antonia likes Marco better than any boy in school.)

RIGHT: Antonia likes Marco *more* than any other boy in school.

(wrong): (Neil didn't attend classes as regular as he should have.)

RIGHT: Neil didn't attend classes as *regularly* as he should have.

(wrong): (He real foolish became involved with groups that preach hatred.)

RIGHT: He *very foolishly* became involved with groups that preach hatred.



- (wrong): (The more uncomfortably he felt, the lesser he participated.)  
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX
- RIGHT: The more *uncomfortable* he felt, the *less* he participated.
- (wrong): (Basic, the robot is too efficient but the concern is that it will replace a great  
XXXXXX XXXX  
XXXXXXXXXX amount of people.)
- RIGHT: *Basically*, the robot is *very* efficient but the concern is that it will replace a great number of people.
- (wrong): (It was so hot day, no one felt like working.)  
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
- RIGHT: It was *such a hot day*, no one felt like working.
- RIGHT: It was *so hot a day*, no one felt like working.
- (wrong): (Ida has further to walk than Sofia.)  
XXXXXXXXXX
- RIGHT: Ida has *farther* to walk than Sofia.

## Position of Adverbs

*Frequency adverbs* are placed before an action verb, after the *be* verb, before or after the auxiliary of the action verb, and at the beginning or the end of a sentence.

They *usually* pay their rent the first of each month.  
 He *is frequently* absent. He *is frequently* working while classes are being held.  
 She *has often* viewed the stars through a telescope. (*also*: She *often has* viewed the stars through a telescope. *also*: *Often* she *has viewed* the stars through a telescope.)  
*Sometimes* Jeff has been too busy to attend the social events. *also*: Jeff has *sometimes* been too busy to attend the social events.)

The adverb *still* is placed before the action verb but after the *be* verb. In negative sentences, *still* comes before the auxiliary.

Katrina *still* lives at home with her parents.  
 Mr. Rubin *was still* with a client when we called him.  
 A commission *still hasn't* been appointed.

*Recently* and *lately* are placed at the beginning or the end of a sentence and at the end of a dependent clause. *Recently* may also be placed after the auxiliary.

*Recently* scientists have been studying primitive tribes in Brazil.  
 Although the desk had been constructed *recently* (or: had *recently* been constructed), it strongly resembled an antique.  
 There has been a lot of discussion about life on other planets *lately*.

*Certainly*, *probably*, and *possibly* are placed before the action verb or the auxiliary. They are placed before or after *be* verbs or at the beginning of the sentence.

They *have certainly* traveled a great deal.  
 They *certainly have* traveled a great deal.

That lecture *certainly* was interesting.  
 That lecture *was certainly* interesting.

She *will probably* be here soon.  
 She *probably will* be here soon.  
*Probably* she *will* be here soon.



*Manner adverbs* are adverbs telling "how" or "in what manner" an action was done. They are placed before or after the action verb, after the *be* verb, or at the beginning or end of a clause or a sentence.

Ms. Spiro *slowly* walked out of the room.

Ms. Spiro walked *slowly* out of the room.

*Carefully*, Rachel cut the pattern.

The clouds were *rapidly* disappearing.

The clouds were disappearing *rapidly*.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Sidney enjoys still playing his clarinet.)

RIGHT: Sidney *still* enjoys playing his clarinet.

(wrong): (When there's an important exhibit, Ben stays sometimes in town.)

RIGHT: When there's an important exhibit, Ben *sometimes* stays in town.

(wrong): (Dinah has been making lately her own clothes.)

RIGHT: *Lately*, Dinah has been making her own clothes.

(wrong): (My husband still was in the office when Bruce called.)

RIGHT: My husband was *still* in the office when Bruce called.

## EXERCISE VII. 7.

Fill in the blanks with the correct form in parentheses.

1. Although Mr. Clark receives a small salary, he manages to deposit money in the bank \_\_\_\_\_ (regular, regularly)
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ child hid behind his mother when the stranger approached. (frightening, frightened)
3. The capital of Japan was \_\_\_\_\_ Kyoto. (original, originally)
4. When the chef had tasted the soup \_\_\_\_\_, he added additional seasoning. (careful, carefully)
5. Of all the subjects he studied, he found political science to be \_\_\_\_\_. (the more interesting, most interesting, the most interesting)
6. Catherine explained the case to the judge \_\_\_\_\_ an experienced lawyer. (eloquent like, as eloquently as, as eloquent as)
7. Having saved \_\_\_\_\_ money, Ernestine was able to buy her mother a lovely new lamp. (little, a little, only little)
8. More corn is produced in the United States than in \_\_\_\_\_ country in the world. (any, all other, any other)
9. This month I have \_\_\_\_\_ number of students than last month. (fewer, less, few)
10. The saw which he had was completely \_\_\_\_\_ for cutting down a large tree. (useless, unuseless, helpless)
11. Plant cells, which are filled chiefly with cellulose, aren't \_\_\_\_\_ animal cells. (the same like, the same as, the same than)
12. The china displayed at the museum had been \_\_\_\_\_ painted in red and gold. (beautiful, beautifully, more beautifully)
13. The auditorium was \_\_\_\_\_, some of us had to stand. (such a crowded place, such crowded a place, so crowded place)
14. His condition grew \_\_\_\_\_ (worsen and worsen, worst and worst, worse and worse)



15. The farmers are hoping that there will be \_\_\_\_\_ rainfall this year than there was last year. (a greater amount of, a great many, a greater number of)
16. The children, \_\_\_\_\_ playing with their sleds, welcomed the winter's first heavy snowfall. (happy, happily)
17. As Carol was waving good-bye to Janet, a cloud appeared and the plane was \_\_\_\_\_ out of sight. (sudden, suddenly)
18. The more he insisted, \_\_\_\_\_ she objected. (the more strongly, the more stronger, the stronger)
19. Although Miss Uchida has been ill rather often, she is \_\_\_\_\_ a healthy person. (fundamentally, fundamental)
20. The great composers, Mendelssohn and Mozart, died at \_\_\_\_\_ young age. (an extreme, a real, a very, too)
21. Of the two, Mozart was \_\_\_\_\_ when he died. (the younger, younger, the more young)

### EXERCISE VII. 8.

There is at least one error in each sentence. Underline the errors and make corrections.

1. Among the schools that were mentioned, Roosevelt High School has the greater academic standing.
2. Mr. Sands has to travel more often than anyone in his firm.
3. Most all of the wildlife refuges near the city were bad damaged by the floods.
4. Having quick spent his money, Fred decided to leave Las Vegas.
5. It's a good plan, perhaps even better as the one presented earlier.
6. I don't think Jane types quite as good or accurate as Leah.
7. Eligibility will be conclusive decided after the interview.
8. People certainly did not want to move but because of high poisonous chemicals, it was real dangerous to remain in the area.
9. Mona always enjoyed skiing but she doesn't do it yet.
10. The illegal shipped equipment was discovered by a federal agent.
11. Totally absorbed in what she was doing, Carol didn't hear the loudly ringing of the bells.
12. There have been twice more imported cars this year than in the previous year.
13. Original her plan was to build a house but it proved to be too expensive.
14. There aren't half so many parks in Los Angeles like there are in London.
15. The boxer wasn't near enough heavy to be eligible for the fight.
16. The parents complain that they haven't received too much mail from their son since he left.
17. Gloria has much interests but primary her interests are in the field of administration.
18. Although most all of my friends disliked the film, I thought it was sort of interesting.

## PRONOUNS

Pronouns are used in place of nouns.

### Types of Pronouns

Subject pronouns	I, you, he, she, it, we, you, they
Object pronouns	me, you, him, her, it, us, you, them



Possessive adjective pronouns	my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their, whose
Possessive noun pronouns	mine, yours, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs
Reflexive pronouns	myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves
Demonstrative pronouns	this, these, that, those
Relative pronouns	who, whom, whose, which, that, whoever, whomever

### Subject Pronouns

A subject pronoun is used as the subject of a sentence or a clause. When there is a comparison made, the complete clause is not repeated. Auxiliaries and verbs are used as clause endings.

*We* enjoy surfing as much as *they*.

or: *We* enjoy surfing as much as *they do*. (implied: as much as they enjoy surfing)

Sally has gone to Europe as many times as *he*.

or: Sally has gone to Europe as many times as *he has*.

*You* men talked more at the meeting than *we* women.

or: *You* men talked more at the meeting than *we* woman *did*.

*He* is not as tall as *she*.

or: *He* is not as tall as *she is*.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (I didn't like the film as much as *her*.)  
xxxx

RIGHT: I didn't like the film as much as *she* (or: *she did*).

Use a subject pronoun after a *be* verb.

It was *he* who answered the door.

The person you met last year was *I*. (or: I was the one you met last year.)

---

NOTE: Pronouns *you*, *we*, and *us* may be used before a noun for emphasis.

---

(wrong): (It is *us* people who require quality education.)  
xxx

RIGHT: It is *we* people who require quality education.

### Object Pronouns

An object pronoun is used as a direct object, an indirect object, an object of a preposition, or an object of an infinitive.

Some of the following sentences illustrate object pronouns in *comparison clauses*.

1. I like *her* as much as I do *him* (implied: as much as I like him)
2. She spends as much time with *me* as she does with *them*.
3. That problem is between *her* and *him*.
4. Her brother has visited Marla more than *her*. (implied: more than he has visited *her*)
5. She wasn't sure, but it appeared to be *him*.
6. They gave presents to *us* three, my sister, my brother, and *me*.



Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (The supervisor gave Tom as much to do as he did ~~she~~.)

RIGHT: The supervisor gave Tom as much to do as he did *her*.)

### Possessive Adjective Pronouns

A *possessive adjective pronoun* is used as an adjective to describe a noun or a gerund. The pronoun must agree in person, gender, and number with the antecedent (the noun or pronoun to which it refers.)

1. Ming and Yang enjoy *their* home very much.
2. Lydia is a fine cook. *Her* cooking is excellent.
3. Ted reminded us to register. We appreciated *his* reminding us.
4. You are very thoughtful. We are grateful for *your* thoughtfulness.
5. Mrs. Khalsa's son was married last week. *His* wife is a teacher.
6. She is the one *whose* art was acclaimed.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (The students played ~~there~~ instruments. ~~Them~~ performing for us was a nice surprise.)

RIGHT: The students played *their* instruments. *Their* performing for us was a nice surprise.

### Possessive Noun Pronouns

A *possessive noun pronoun* is used as a subject, a direct object, an object of a preposition, or an object of an infinitive.

1. It is not my book; it is *hers*.
2. If you forgot your pencil, you can borrow one of *mine*.
3. Please return those tennis balls to us. They are *ours*.
4. No, that book, isn't *mine*. It must be *yours*.
5. Our children were very friendly with *theirs*.
6. These glasses appear to be *his*.
7. *His* was lost and *mine* was returned.
8. Mary is a friend of *his*.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (You may borrow one of ~~my~~.)

RIGHT: You may borrow one of *mine*.

### Reflexive Pronouns

A reflexive pronoun must refer back to the *antecedent*. The pronoun must agree with the antecedent.

Reflexive pronouns often emphasize the fact that the action was done without assistance.

1. Julie conducted the experiment by *herself*.
2. The cat hurt *itself* jumping from the high branch.



3. I *myself* will discuss the problem with her.  
 4. Jack looked at *himself* in the mirror.

---

**NOTE:** There are no such words as *hissself* and *theirselves*.

- (wrong): (The couple painted their house by ~~theirselves~~.)  
 RIGHT: The couple painted their house by *themselves*.

**NOTE:** Do not use a reflexive pronoun after *similar to*, *like*, or *such as*.

- (wrong): (Educated people like ~~ourselves~~ should keep an open mind.)  
 RIGHT: Educated people like *us* should keep an open mind.
- 

### Demonstrative Pronouns

A *demonstrative pronoun* is used to point out a particular item or person. *This* (singular) and *these* (plural) refer to items near at hand. *That* (singular) and *those* (plural) refer to items at a distance. Demonstrative pronouns are used as adjectives, subjects, and objects.

- That* belongs to Mike. (subject)  
*This* pencil needs to be sharpened. (adjective)  
 I would like to buy some of *these* and some of *those*. (object)  
*Those* are beautiful earrings that you are wearing.  
 I had *these* chairs upholstered.

---

**NOTE:** Use *this kind* or *that kind* for singular and uncountable nouns. Use *these kinds* or *those kinds* for plural nouns.

Mrs. Hurwitz has *this kind of carpet* and *those kinds of drapes*.

---

- (wrong): (Alice has ~~this kind of~~ plants in her home.)  
 RIGHT: Alice has *these kinds of* plants in her home.
- 

**NOTE:** Don't use the object pronoun *them* before a participial phrase, a relative clause, or a prepositional phrase which identifies people or items.

---

- (wrong): (The proctor passed out pencils to ~~them~~ taking the test.)  
 RIGHT: The proctor passed out pencils to *those* (people) taking the test.  
 RIGHT: The proctor passed out pencils to *those* who were taking the test.  
 RIGHT: The proctor passed out pencils to *those* in the classroom.
- 

**NOTE:** Do not use *them* as an adjective or as a subject.

- (wrong): (Christine owns one of ~~them~~ cameras.)  
 RIGHT: Christine owns one of *those* cameras.  
 (wrong): (~~Them~~ are my friends.)  
 RIGHT: *Those* are my friends.
-







*Whom, that, and whomever* are used as *objects of verbs in relative clauses that refer to people*. *Whom* and *whomever* are used as *objects of prepositions*.

---

**NOTE:** Although the relative pronoun *whom* may appear to occupy a subject position, it is, in fact, an object when a subject of the relative clause is present. (In informal usage the relative subject *who* is more commonly used.)

---

Bob is the young man *whom* she interviewed. (*She interviewed whom.*)

Bob is the young man *who* she interviewed. (informal)

The woman *to whom she spoke* is her teacher.

The woman *that (whom) she spoke to* is her teacher. (Sometimes the preposition is placed at the end of the clause.)

She said you could bring *whomever* you wish.

*Avoid the following kinds of errors:*

(wrong): (He's the one ~~whom~~, I believe, is interested in entomology.)

RIGHT: He's the one, *who*, I believe, is interested in entomology.

(wrong): (He didn't know ~~for who~~ Miss Ryan was substituting.)

RIGHT: He didn't know *for whom* Miss Ryan was substituting.

---

**NOTE:** *Whom* and *that* may be omitted. Compare:

The girl *whom* you want to meet is Masami's girlfriend.

The girl *that* you want to meet is Masami's girlfriend.

The girl you want to meet is Masami's girlfriend.

The person *for whom* he has worked is his father.

The person *whom* he has worked for is his father.

The person *that* he has worked for is his father.

The person he has worked for is his father.

---

The relative pronouns *which* and *that* are used to refer to *things*, and, as a rule, to *animals*. *Which* and *that* may be omitted when used as object in a relative clause.

The book *which* I borrowed from Carmen has been very useful. (*I borrowed which.*)

The book *that* I borrowed from Carmen has been very useful.

The book I borrowed from Carmen has been very useful.

*Which* and *that* may *not* be omitted when used as subject of the relative clause.

Joe's dog, *which* followed Joe everywhere, had been given to him by his aunt.

Joe's dog, *that* followed Joe everywhere, had been given to him by his aunt.

(wrong): (Joe's dog, followed Joe everywhere, had been given to him by his aunt.)

The relative pronoun *where* refers to *places*.

This is the city *where* George Washington lived.

This is the city *in which* George Washington lived.

This is the city *which* George Washington lived in.



*Avoid the following kinds of errors:*

(wrong): (This is the book where I read the story of George Washington.)

(wrong): (This is the book that I read the story of George Washington.)

RIGHT: This is the book *in which* I read the story of George Washington.

The relative pronoun *whose* is used to show possession. *Whose* generally refers to people, but sometimes to places or things.

It's interesting to meet people *whose* culture differs from our own.

Some official documents, *whose* wording is difficult to understand, are being revised.

*Avoid the following kinds of errors:*

(wrong): (Mrs. Estrada, which purse had been stolen, reported the incident to the police.)

RIGHT: Mrs. Estrada, *whose* purse had been stolen, reported the incident to the police.

Use a preposition with the relative pronoun when it is required.

The house *in which* Andrew Carnegie was born is still standing.

(wrong): (The house which Andrew Carnegie was born is still standing.)

The tourist *in whose* luggage were gold coins, was detained.

The tourist, *whose* luggage contained gold coins, was detained.

(wrong): (The tourist whose luggage were gold coins, was detained.)

(wrong): (The tourist in whose luggage contained gold coins was detained.)

The means *by which* he solved the problem remains a mystery.

(wrong): (The means which he solved the problem remains a mystery.)

Johanna is the woman *with whom* Maria is studying the cello.

(wrong): (Johanna is the woman whom Maria is studying the cello.)

Don't repeat a preposition.

Ned returned the money to his sister *from whom* he had borrowed it.

(wrong): (Ned returned the money to his sister *from* from whom he had borrowed it from.)

Don't use the relative pronoun *which* in clauses that are not relative clauses.

The belief that the earth was flat was held for centuries.

(wrong): (The belief which the earth was flat was held for centuries.)

Use *whoever* instead of *whomever* if the word occupies a subject position, even if it is preceded by a preposition.

Mrs. Van Dan bought the books for *whoever* might be interested.

(wrong): (Mrs. Van Dan bought the books for whomever might be interested.)



## EXERCISE VII. 9.

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the pronoun.

1. He likes to hike but I like to hike as much as \_\_\_\_\_.
2. We have three bicycles. If you don't have one, you are welcome to use one of \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Anita's leg is sore. While she was exercising this morning, she hurt \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Little James complained that his sister had received more presents than \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The film which Mary and John saw appeared to have impressed her more than \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Both Floyd and Maude have a large collection of records but I think \_\_\_\_\_ is even larger than \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Mrs. Flourney, \_\_\_\_\_ house had been burglarized, decided to have an alarm system installed.
8. My husband and I forgot to bring some things with us. Would you buy toothbrushes for \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_?
9. The child didn't want any assistance. He insisted on dressing \_\_\_\_\_.
10. She invited all \_\_\_\_\_ who had been in her class last term.
11. The market on San Vicente street has more vegetables than \_\_\_\_\_ on Montana street.
12. The secret he told you is strictly between \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
13. The buses in town are larger than \_\_\_\_\_ in the suburbs.
14. Forms were passed out to \_\_\_\_\_ registering for the course.
15. Why don't you show your paintings to \_\_\_\_\_ you think might exhibit them.
16. Parents complain that there aren't enough quality programs on television \_\_\_\_\_ are shown for children.
17. The drawer \_\_\_\_\_ she keeps her notes is in the middle.
18. This is the town \_\_\_\_\_ library she found some rare books.

## EXERCISE VII. 10.

There is at least one pronoun error in each sentence. Underline the errors and make corrections.

1. My sister is a little bit shorter than me.
2. The psychology lecture today was more interesting to Beth than yesterday.
3. She insisted that it was not her who had awakened the baby.
4. I see where it's going to rain tonight.
5. Between her writing for radio and him playing professional hockey, the couple does very well.
6. The books which he did his research are in the university library.
7. I'm sorry that I didn't remember whom you were.
8. Unfortunately, the magazine where the recipe was printed can't be found.
9. There's a possibility that it may have been them who called last night.
10. Who did you speak to this morning?
11. There are still them that think men have more intelligence than us women.
12. The stunt job has been offered to whomever is willing to take the risks.
13. She's convinced that people like themselves wouldn't do anything foolish.
14. The thought which she might fail the test never occurred to her.
15. Mrs. Moses makes toys for them children who are in hospitals.
16. They're the family which house was damaged by the wind last week.
17. The topic about which the trainer was talking about was unfamiliar.



18. The foundation which grants are given to charitable organizations is administered by Mrs. Perle.
19. This here kind of vegetables can't be grown in tropical climates.
20. John is the student whose benefit Ms. Sim repeated the lesson.

## PREPOSITIONS

A *preposition*, combined with an object (noun, pronoun, or gerund), forms a *prepositional phrase*, which imparts information about a word in the sentence.

The list below describes the general use of some common prepositions.

### AT

where situated; address; clock time; night; midnight; noon; at present; at first

*At present* there is no one home.

She goes to school *at night*.

He is *at school* right now.

She arrived *at four o'clock*.

He lives *at 431 Lincoln Street*.

She felt uncomfortable *at first*.

### ABOUT

pertaining to a subject or a situation

That book is *about the Civil War*.

He is worried *about his grades*.

He is happy *about returning to America*.

He is sincere *about his desire to help his people*.

### FOR

purpose; time length; for whom; in favor of; how much

He went to the store *for some cigarettes*.

A saw is used *for cutting wood*.

She has worked there *for three years*.

He repaired the bicycle *for me*.

He works *for a building company*.

They are *for equal rights for all people*.

He bought a silk shirt *for only ten dollars*.

### WITH

anything in hand; accompanied by; descriptive of; converse with

She opened the box *with a knife*.

We went to the theater *with our friends*.

She wore a hat *with a flower on it*.

He discussed the idea *with his boss*.

### TO

directly; to a place or to a person



We walked *to the store*.  
 He spoke *to his mother*.  
 He gave it *to me*.  
 We drove *to San Francisco*.

**BY**

how; by what method; by what person; by what time or date

It was repaired *by a mechanic*.  
 She improved her English *by practicing*.  
 He got there *by bus*.  
*By next week* it should be completed.  
 It was written *by Roberta Cohaney*.

**AGAINST**

positioned against; opposed to a principle or an idea

He stood *against the wall*.  
 She was *against* busing children to school.  
 It is *against her principles* to cheat on a test.  
 They were *against their daughter's* marrying Fred.

**LIKE**

similar to

The boy spoke *like a man*.  
 This perfume smells *like roses*.

**OF**

pertaining to; in reference to

Many *of the voters* felt that their property taxes were too high.  
 She is afraid *of the dark*.  
 She lost one *of her earrings*.  
 I bought a pound *of sugar*.

**FROM**

source (origin); from a place; from the activity; from a person; from the beginning

She got a wristwatch *from her parents*.  
 She was all worn out *from washing* windows.  
 He just got back *from Chicago*.  
 He worked *from 8 A.M. to 6 P.M.*

**IN**

inside a place; projecting future time; month, season, year, evening; in a country, city, etc.

The ticket is *in my purse*.  
 I will be there *in a few minutes*.  
 He's coming *in October*.  
 He studied history *in 1955*.  
 She likes to read *in the evening*.



She likes to take long walks *in the spring*.  
He is *in Chicago* right now.

## ON

surface; specific day; specific date; on a vehicle (except car); on a street; on a team

The book is *on the shelf*.  
He will arrive *on Sunday*.  
She plans to leave *on May 30*.  
He is *on an airplane* right now.  
He lives *on Pico Boulevard*.  
Mike is *on the college football team*.

A variety of prepositional phrases are demonstrated below. Some of these phrases are idiomatic. (Reminder! The possessive form is used before a gerund or a gerund phrase, as well as before a noun.)

1. We had confidence *in Robert's ability*.
2. She doesn't approve *of their staying out late at night*.
3. The Smiths called *off their fishing plans because of rain*.
4. That baker is famous *for her pies*.
5. There's no point *in my delaying you*.
6. Educators, *on the whole*, are supportive *of those who, much later in life*, decide to resume academic study.
7. Everyone was pleased *with Roger's singing*.
8. *Besides using theirs*, we can use two *of ours*.
9. A dinner party was held *in honor of the guest speaker*.
10. As John walked *into the room*, he was asked *by the team captain* to become a member *of the team*.

The student must practice using the correct preposition. Sometimes it is helpful to think of two words as being one word. For example, *recover from* may be thought of as *recoverfrom*: "recoverfrom a cold," "recoverfrom the measles," "recoverfrom an illness," "recoverfrom grief." After such practice, the sound of the word *from* becomes firmly related to the word *recover*. Study the lists below for the correct prepositions. See Idioms in the Supplement for unfamiliar expressions and for further verbs with prepositions.

## Verbs with Prepositions

accuse of	experiment with	insist on, upon	object to
approve of	interfere with	keep on	refer to
consist of	sympathize with	rely on, upon	respond to
be in charge of	argue about, with	call off	subscribe to
be in favor of	boast about	put off	arrive at (airport, school, theater, etc.)
remind (one) of	complain about, of	apologize to, for	arrive in (city, state, country)
take care of	find out about	apply to, for	look at, for
take advantage of	forget about	be used to	preside over
what's the use of	speak about	compare to	believe in
argue with, about	think about, of	compare with	excel in
agree with	worry about	contribute to	major in
compete with	depend on, upon	dedicate to	participate in
communicate with	comment on	devote to	
cooperate with	count on	look forward to	



take part in  
succeed in  
excuse for, from  
forgive for

substitute for  
thank for  
vote for  
distinguish from

escape from  
prevent from  
prohibit from

recover from  
rescue from  
save from

*Adjectives and Past Participles with Prepositions*

afraid of  
appreciative of  
ashamed of  
aware of  
bored of  
capable of  
careful of  
composed of  
conscious of  
considerate of  
critical of  
envious of  
fearful of  
frightened of  
guilty of  
hopeful of  
disappointed in  
experienced, inexperienced in  
interested, disinterested in  
involved, uninvolved in  
skillful, unskillful in  
successful, unsuccessful in  
based on, upon

dependent on, upon  
founded on, by  
insistent on, upon  
innocent of  
jealous of  
made of  
proud of  
regardless of  
sick of  
supportive of  
suspected of  
thoughtful of  
tired of  
tolerant of  
acquainted with  
covered with  
familiar with  
finished with  
pleased with  
provided with  
patient with  
satisfied with  
alert to  
attentive to  
committed to  
comparable to  
confined to

dedicated to  
devoted to  
faithful to  
indifferent to  
inferior to  
kind to  
married to  
opposed to  
polite to  
preferable to  
related to  
sensitive to  
similar to  
superior to  
derived from  
different from  
divorced from  
far from  
free from  
prevented from  
prohibited from  
protected from  
good at  
surprised at, by  
upset over  
divided in, into  
anxious about

concerned about  
confused about  
enthusiastic about  
excited about  
happy about  
nervous about  
sad about  
skeptical about  
worried about  
adequate for  
appropriate for  
blamed for  
famous for  
fit, unfit for  
grateful for  
known for  
perfect for  
qualified for  
responsible for  
suitable, unsuitable for  
affected by  
angered by  
attacked by  
caused by  
flattered by  
offended by

*Nouns with Prepositions*

admiration for  
fondness for  
pity for  
preference for  
reason for  
responsibility for  
respect for  
search for  
substitution for  
sympathy for  
authority on  
dependency on  
effect on, upon  
reliance on  
ability in

belief in  
competency in  
confidence in  
experience in  
failure in  
faith in  
participation in  
pleasure in  
pride in  
satisfaction in  
skill in  
success in  
difference among (3 or more)  
difference between (2)

approval of  
choice of  
division of  
fear of  
knowledge of  
means of  
possibility of  
prevention of  
process of  
divorce from  
escape from  
protection from  
attempt at  
access to  
commitment to

comparison to  
devotion to  
dedication to  
indifference to  
objection to  
opposition to  
reference to  
response to  
subscription to  
argument about  
complaint about  
concern about  
confusion about  
doubt about  
ideas about



## Prepositional Expressions

ahead of	in place of	make use of	in reference to
in case of	in search of	on account of	in regard to
in care of	instead of	with the exception of	due to
in charge of	in spite of	what's the use of	in connection with
in the course of	in terms of	because of	in agreement with
in favor of	by means of	for the purpose of	except for
in front of	for fear of	in addition to	take a chance on
in honor of	for the sake of	in comparison to	feel like

Noun clauses and phrases beginning with informational words (*why, what, when, how, etc.*) may be used as objects of the prepositions, just as nouns, object pronouns, and gerunds are.

Isaac was interested *in how he could improve his reading ability.*

Isaac was interested *in how to improve his reading ability.*

Nadis talked *about why she had decided to become a naturalist.*

---

**NOTE:** Don't use other clauses as objects of prepositions.

---

(wrong): (She hung the picture by means of she used her heel.)

RIGHT: She hung the picture by means of *using* her heel.

(wrong): (Mrs. Cole was angry about Cyrus left the meeting early.)

RIGHT: Mr. Cole was angry about *Cyrus's leaving the meeting early.*

## Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (Buford stated that he wasn't familiar for English literature.)

RIGHT: Buford stated that he wasn't *familiar with* English literature.

(wrong): (Everyone has gone home except Mary and I.)

RIGHT: Everyone has gone home except Mary and *me*.

(wrong): (There is never any animosity between we sisters.)

RIGHT: There is never any animosity between *us* sisters.

(wrong): (The early pioneers traveled west by means a covered wagon.)

RIGHT: The early pioneers traveled west *by means of* a covered wagon.

(wrong): (Renaldo is both capable and experienced to prepare banquets.)

RIGHT: Renaldo is both *capable of* and *experienced in preparing* banquets.

(wrong): (Compared with freshly picked fruit, this fruit is tasteless.)

RIGHT: Compared *to* freshly picked fruit, this fruit is tasteless.

(wrong): (Except her wedding ring, Zia wore no jewelry.)

RIGHT: *Except for* her wedding ring, Zia wore no jewelry.

(wrong): (Uri looked like he had seen a ghost.)

RIGHT: Uri looked *as if* he had seen a ghost.

---

**NOTE:** *As* means "in the role of" or "in the manner of." *Like* means "similar to."

---



(wrong): (Mrs. Walsh, like a busy mother of two children, had little time to study.)

RIGHT: Mrs. Walsh, *as a busy mother of two children*, had little time to study.

RIGHT: Jane thought that Jeffrey looked *like his father*.

### EXERCISE VII. 11.

Fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions.

1. She lives \_\_\_\_\_ 311 5th Street.
2. The course will begin \_\_\_\_\_ January 16.
3. You are permitted to take a small bag \_\_\_\_\_ the plane.
4. She said that she was tired \_\_\_\_\_ cooking dinners.
5. The designer preferred not to comment \_\_\_\_\_ his new models.
6. His grades were far superior this month \_\_\_\_\_ those of last month.
7. Some of his classes are \_\_\_\_\_ night.
8. I have no objection, if everyone agrees, \_\_\_\_\_ your playing your drum.
9. The letter was in regard \_\_\_\_\_ books that had been ordered.
10. The proposal depends not only \_\_\_\_\_ her qualifications but also \_\_\_\_\_ her availability.
11. Since it was their first day on campus, they weren't familiar \_\_\_\_\_ the location of the engineering school.
12. Living in a large city provides opportunities \_\_\_\_\_ many cultural experiences.
13. In comparison \_\_\_\_\_ his compositions a few months ago, his recent compositions are excellent.
14. He felt inordinately responsible, for some reason, \_\_\_\_\_ the student's dropping out of class.
15. We were prevented by security guards \_\_\_\_\_ entering the building.
16. She appeared to be offended \_\_\_\_\_ my inability to recall her name.
17. The advertising plan had to be cancelled because it conflicted \_\_\_\_\_ the local laws.
18. The stereophonic earphones can be used in connection \_\_\_\_\_ the new sound system.
19. Firefighters suspected an employee \_\_\_\_\_ having started the fire.
20. The window was finally opened by means \_\_\_\_\_ a crowbar.

### EXERCISE VII. 12.

Match the words in the first rows with the prepositions in the second rows, as in the first example.

approve	for	enthusiastic	for
recover	of	similar	of
subscribe	with	suitable	with
authority	to	critical	to
affected	about	different	about
grateful	in	take a chance	in
sympathize	from	compete	from
complain	on	angered	on
involved	by	skillful	by

### EXERCISE VII. 13.

Fill in the blanks with the correct passive tense (or the past participle as an adjective) of the verb in parentheses, *plus* the correct preposition.



1. Since he became a zoologist, he (dedicate) \_\_\_\_\_ the preservation of African wildlife.
2. Donna said that she (please) \_\_\_\_\_ her performance last night.
3. Frequently my eyes (affect) \_\_\_\_\_ the smog.
4. In the months ahead, Carol (commit) \_\_\_\_\_ the completion of her thesis.
5. On several occasions, some members of Congress (oppose) \_\_\_\_\_ government subsidization of failing businesses.
6. Last night, they (disturb) \_\_\_\_\_ the noise from the apartment overhead.
7. Four-fifths of the earth's surface (compose) \_\_\_\_\_ water.
8. The boy (blame) \_\_\_\_\_ the incident but he had had nothing to do with it.
9. Henry (marry) \_\_\_\_\_ Helen for twenty-one years.
10. When we entered the room, the conferees (involve) \_\_\_\_\_ a discussion on methodology.

## EXERCISE VII. 14.

Underline the prepositional errors and make corrections.

1. George lives on 321 Madison Avenue.
2. Compared with his living quarters last year, his room is spacious.
3. He takes classes in the night.
4. The witness seemed afraid for describing what he had seen.
5. After serving a year, he received a substantial raise by his employer.
6. She has been studying at three o'clock to six o'clock.
7. The books are in the shelf.
8. Although advanced in age, the dog is tolerant with children.
9. He said he was tired, after so many years, with being a physician.
10. Most children are capable for doing many things.
11. One should have confidence of his own ability.
12. The investigation was in connection to the accident.
13. Although people objected about the new tax, it wasn't revoked.
14. The premier said he looked forward for meeting the president.
15. Leaders can often be insensitive about the needs of the people.
16. After many attempts, he has succeeded to swim across the channel.
17. They told him that they were appreciative for everything he had done.
18. There's a lot of satisfaction with helping others.
19. Swimming in a lake is very different than swimming in an ocean.
20. The parents were excited from the baby's learning to walk.
21. Some Thai dishes seem similar with Chinese dishes.
22. The dish consisted from vegetables, meat, and rice.
23. She took a bus home because she didn't feel for walking.
24. He lets his business interfere into his pleasure.
25. We noticed that the fruit tree was covered by insects.
26. They were not familiar, they said, on the procedure.
27. The applicant was rejected because he wasn't well qualified in the position.
28. Matisse became famous throughout the world from his magnificent paintings.
29. In addition with other complaints, Miss Adams doesn't like the lights in her office.
30. The nurse could easily sympathize, having had back pain herself, for her patient.
31. The Svensons are not disturbed from the overhead planes because they have become accustomed for them.







10. Mr. Abdel doesn't know very much English yet but he speaks it \_\_\_\_\_ keep his job. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. good enough to C. well enough for  
 B. enough well to D. well enough to
11. After spending \_\_\_\_\_ next several years in the army, the young man probably will acquire skills which he can use in civilian life. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. an C. a  
 B. the D. (no article)
12. The ambassador's appointment \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. already was confirmed C. has confirmed already  
 B. has already been confirmed D. had been confirm already
13. Alice plays tennis with my sister and \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. me C. myself  
 B. I D. me myself
14. The balloon was filled with more and more air until it \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. burst C. busted  
 B. burst D. bust
15. My favorite baritone aria is sung in \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. the Act Two C. the Act Second  
 B. second act D. the second act
16. Of the two compositions, the first one was \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. the better C. the best  
 B. best D. better
17. Thin sheets of copper, covered with a particular chemical, \_\_\_\_\_ early photographs called daguerrotypes. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. used to take C. were used to take  
 B. were used to taking D. were used in take
18. Edward \_\_\_\_\_ to eat his meals the past week, much less socialize with his friends. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. has barely had time C. barely hasn't had time  
 B. hasn't barely had time D. has barely time
19. After overcoming her shyness, Nan grew \_\_\_\_\_ the other girls. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. the more popular of C. as popular like  
 B. the most popular than D. as popular as
20. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ of the author who wrote the screenplay? (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. found the name out C. found out a name  
 B. found out the name D. found a name
21. Eggs, although wonderfully nutritious, have \_\_\_\_\_ of fat content. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. high number C. the high amounts  
 B. a high number D. a high amount



22. The master of ceremonies \_\_\_\_\_ containing the winner's name. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. handed her an envelope                      C. handed her a envelope  
 B. handed to her an envelope                  D. handed an envelope her
23. Clothing, especially women's clothing, \_\_\_\_\_ by dress designers to promote the fashion industry. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. is constantly changing                      C. is constantly being changed  
 B. are constantly being changed              D. is frequent being changed
24. Rita felt both \_\_\_\_\_ the interview which she was about to face. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. unprepared and nervous about            C. unprepared for and nervous about  
 B. unprepared about and nervous about      D. unprepared for and nervous for
25. \_\_\_\_\_ by the pollution, many trees in the area did not grow to their full height. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A. Affected    C. Affecting  
 B. Effectuated                                      D. Effecting

### MIXED EXERCISE 8: PART B

Fill in the circled letter that represents the *incorrect* form. Be able to explain why the word or the phrase you have chosen is not acceptable and how you can correct it.

1. Between you and I, I don't approve of the manner in which the lawyer is hand-  
 A                      B                      C                      (A) (B) (C) (D)  
ling the case.  
 D
2. Many airline companies today require that all luggages be inspected before  
 A                      B                      C                      (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 passengers are admitted to the waiting rooms.  
 D
3. The kidney of a fish, like other animals, is used in the process of excreting  
 A                      B                      C                      (A) (B) (C) (D)  
wastes from the body.  
 D
4. She was in a beauty parlor getting her hair wash when a messenger burst into  
 A                      B                      C                      (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 the room to announce that he had a telegram for her.  
 D
5. His knowledge of world affairs seemed to us very limited for a educated man  
 A                      B                      (A) (B) (C) (D)  
who, we were told, had once taught in a college.  
 C                      D
6. My friend insists that Haydn, a famous composer and conductor in the eight-  
 A                      (A) (B) (C) (D)  
eenth century, wrote greater music than all the composers of his day.  
 B                      C                      D
7. If people which were mentally disturbed would seek psychological help early in  
 A                      B                      C                      (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 their ailment, they could probably avoid serious consequences.  
 D



8. An infection sometimes results when the body is attacked from a bacteria to which the body has little resistance. (A) (B) (C) (D)
9. The principal requested that a purchase order be issued for pencils sharpeners in every classroom of the school. (A) (B) (C) (D)
10. The clothing which she had packed in her bag was chiefly suitable for real cold weather. (A) (B) (C) (D)
11. After they have played bingo, the women went uptown to meet with their friends for dinner. (A) (B) (C) (D)
12. The small corner shop who's merchandise is highly in demand is always crowded. (A) (B) (C) (D)
13. They couldn't help laughing at the small redhaired boy who had given himself a haircut with a dull pair of scissors. (A) (B) (C) (D)
14. After the show the comedian explained us that almost all the stories he had told us were true. (A) (B) (C) (D)
15. Jenny is so upset that she has laid on the bed since she and her friend quarrelled. (A) (B) (C) (D)
16. One had to agree that the more better Vicky felt about herself, the more capable she became. (A) (B) (C) (D)
17. My little brother always gets exciting about going to the seashore so he wakes up earlier than anyone else in the house. (A) (B) (C) (D)
18. Its not likely that all of the contractors will be able to understand the complicated regulations. (A) (B) (C) (D)
19. Most bankers sincerely believe that finance is one of the poorest understood problems in the country. (A) (B) (C) (D)
20. The plot of the story is where two sisters meet again after a separation of twenty-five years. (A) (B) (C) (D)
21. I suggest that you all are very quiet if you want the party to be a surprise. (A) (B) (C) (D)



22. The speaker this evening, whom I understand is an authority on crime prevention, will be focusing on self-protection. (A B C D)
23. Although her dog is not a thoroughbred, it followed orders in the training class at the park yesterday, quicker than any of the other dogs that were there. (A B C D)
24. If the airport were equipped properly before the tragic accident occurred, the accident might have been averted. (A B C D)
25. In addition to all the other sporting events in the marathon, each contestant had to go on a three-miles mountain climb. (A B C D)
26. Mr. Schwartz has had a number of jobs in his lifetime, but he's primary an educator. (A B C D)
27. The typewriter, which Ben had used for his thesis, was so old that the letters on the typewriter's keys were barely visible. (A B C D)
28. "Where do you go bowling?" "The very best alleys are at Main Street." (A B C D)
29. Norton walked into the room confidently since he felt that he had prepared himself as good as he possibly could. (A B C D)
30. Not being familiar with registration procedure, the student had no idea what she should do. (A B C D)
31. The twins want get jobs during the summer vacation, a plan which sounds like a good idea to their parents. (A B C D)
32. The baby-sitter, whose care Mrs. Van Pelt had left her children, fell asleep while she was reading the children a story. (A B C D)
33. It was easy to tell, practically from the beginning of the match, that our opponents had much more expertise than us. (A B C D)
34. Artificial satellites are them which have been put into orbit by scientists for exploratory and experimental purposes. (A B C D)



35. Wealthy people like themselves, who have never known deprivation, may not be able to empathize with those far less fortunate than they.      A B C D      (A) (B) (C) (D)
36. A great number of senior citizens have as action a life as those much younger than they.      A B C D      (A) (B) (C) (D)



# Eight

## WRITING STRUCTURE AND FORM

### SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

The verb must agree with the subject in number and person. Use a singular verb with a singular noun or pronoun, and a plural verb with a plural noun or pronoun.

Ryan *has* two brothers.

They *work* for the telephone company.

Use a singular verb with uncountable nouns. Review the material on uncountable nouns in Chapter Seven.

In all of the classes, *attendance has been excellent*.

Two subjects joined by *and* are considered plural and must therefore be followed by a plural verb.

Carol and Janet *are planning* to visit their parents next Christmas.

The objects of prepositions do *not* change the number of the subject!

A box of oranges *was* given to us.

(wrong): (A box of oranges *were* given to us.)  
XXXXXXXXXXXX

---

**NOTE:** The following prepositional expressions do *not* change a singular subject to a plural subject: *with, along with, together with, as well as, in addition to, besides*.

Mary, along with her sisters, *attends* the sessions regularly.

(wrong): (Mary, along with her sisters, *attend* the sessions regularly.)  
XXXXXXXX

---

Singular subjects connected by *or* or *nor* are followed by a singular verb.

John, Mike, or Noriko *drives* Paula to work each morning.

(wrong): (John, Mike, or Noriko *drive* Paula to work each morning.)  
XXXXXXX



When a sentence or clause begins with *there*, *here*, or with a pronoun such as *who*, *where*, *what*, *which* or *how*, the verb must match the true subject.

There **is**, according to reports, some *doubt* about the outcome.

Here **are** the *books* you ordered.

What **are** your *names*?

How **has** *he* been feeling?

(wrong): (Here comes the children.)

RIGHT: Here **come** the *children*.

When an infinitive construction is the subject, use a singular verb.

*To produce fine paintings* requires skill and creativity.

When a gerund construction is the subject, use a singular verb.

*Growing one's own vegetables* is pleasurable and gratifying.

When a noun clause is the subject, use a singular verb.

*What his sons did when they finished their jobs* was of no concern to him.

Study the chart below, which lists nouns and indefinite pronouns that are followed by a singular form of the verb, a plural form of the verb, or either one.

Singular		Singular or Plural	Plural
one	salt, advice (etc.)	any	two (etc.)
each	whatever	none	few
every	whoever	some	many
many a ...	pair of ...	all	both
everyone	kind of ...	the rest	several
anyone	sort of ...	most	others
someone	type of ...	a lot	people
anybody	the number	either ... or	persons
somebody	much	neither ... nor	clothes
nobody	little	half	kinds of ...
flock	the other	a third (etc.)	types of ...
herd	another	ten percent (etc.)	sorts of ...
man/human race	the first, second (etc.)	five dollars (etc.)	children
mankind	a great deal	two hours, miles (etc.)	men (etc.)
clothing	percentage	team, family, jury (etc.)	a number
furniture	either, neither	fish, deer (etc.)	pieces of furniture
	economics, mathematics (etc.)		scissors
	government		glasses

Study the following examples of subject-verb agreement. Note that verbs after quantity pronouns (*some*, *most*, *none*, *half*, *a lot*, *all*, *a third*, *two percent*, *the rest*) are determined by the object following the preposition *of*. *Every*, *each*, and *many a*, remain single even when there is more than one subject.

1. *Every man, woman, and child* is an important being.
2. *All of the food* was prepared the day before the event.



3. *All of the meals were prepared the day before the event.*
4. *A number of books were missing from the shelf.*
5. *The number of books missing was indeed large.*
6. *A third of his composition has been corrected.*
7. *A third of their compositions have been corrected.*
8. *Whoever finishes the race first will be this year's champion.*
9. *Either (one) of them is competent to do the job.*
10. *Neither of the two pieces was familiar to him.*

---

NOTE: In sentences with *either . . . or* and *neither . . . nor*, the verb is determined by the subject closer to it.

---

11. *Neither Mary nor her brothers are going to come tonight.*
12. *Neither Mary's brothers nor Mary is going to come tonight.*
13. *Either the sofa or the chairs have been sold.*

---

NOTE: Use *kind of* with singular verbs and *kinds of* with plural verbs (also true of *sort of* and *type of*). *Kind of* refers to single items and *kinds of* refers to plural items. However, both are sometimes used with uncountable nouns.

---

14. *A strange type of bug is in the garden.*
15. *Strange types of bugs are in the garden.*
16. *What kind of rice is served in that restaurant?*
17. *What kinds of rice are served in that restaurant?*
18. *In London the people enjoy the great number of plays performed.*
19. *A lot (or much) has been said about pollution but little has been done.*
20. *A lot of industries are interested in developing good public relations.*
21. *Many have wished that they had a better education.*
22. *Many a man and woman has wished that he or she had had a better education.*
23. *Ninety percent of the students in our school are pleased with the instruction.*
24. *A large percentage of the students is pleased with the instruction.*
25. *Three chapters were discussed in class today.*

---

NOTE: Some plural nouns may be thought of as a single collective noun; hence, the verb is singular.

---

26. *Three chapters a night was required reading in Sue's class.*
27. *Five hundred miles is a long distance to drive in one day.*
28. *One of the maps is missing. Two are on the wall. The first (one) belongs to a student and the second belongs to the teacher.*

---

NOTE: Verb agreement after certain uses of *one* can be confusing. Compare the following sentences, noting the italicized "clues."

*One of those men likes to drive fast.*  
 He is *the only one* of those men who *likes* to drive fast.  
 He is *one of those men who like* to drive fast.

---

Verbs are often separated from the subject by words, phrases, and clauses. No matter how wordy or complicated a sentence may be, or how far the verb is from the subject, make sure



the main verb agrees with the main subject. Make sure also that the verb in the dependent clause agrees with the subject of the dependent clause. (If the subject is a relative pronoun, the verb must agree with the antecedent.)

The *cost* of renting apartments in some of the cities in the United States is considerably higher than *many* have expected it to be.

In each of the departments, the *buyer*, who *consults* with the clerks to check on shortages, *decides* how much to order. (*Consults*, the verb of the relative clause, is singular because the subject, *who*, refers to the singular *buyer*.)

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

- (wrong): (The elevators in one of the stores *doesn't* work.)  
XXXXXXXXXX
- RIGHT: The elevators in one of the stores *don't* work.
- (wrong): (Neither of the trains *are* running today.)  
XXXXX
- RIGHT: Neither of the trains *is* running today.
- (wrong): (A large percentage of goods sold in the United States *are* foreign.)  
XXXXX
- RIGHT: A large percentage of goods sold in the United States *is* foreign.
- (wrong): (It's one of those problems that *is* difficult to solve.)  
XXX
- RIGHT: It's one of those problems that *are* difficult to solve.
- (wrong): (There *is* a number of people who *lives* in rural areas today that *is* considering moving into the cities.)  
XXX XXXXX XXX
- RIGHT: There *are* a number of people who *live* in rural areas today that *are* considering moving into the cities.
- (wrong): (She *think* that one of the rats in the science laboratory *have* escaped.)  
XXXXXXXXX XXXXXXX
- RIGHT: She *thinks* that one of the rats in the science laboratory *has* escaped.
- (wrong): (How many had registered *were* not yet known.)  
XXXXXXXXX
- RIGHT: How many had registered *was* not yet known.
- (wrong): (The Randalls' daughter, as well as her friends, *were* at the concert last night.)  
XXXXXXXXX
- RIGHT: The Randalls' daughter, as well as her friends, *was* at the concert last night.
- (wrong): (Neither Mrs. Carter or her daughters-in-law *is* working at the present time.)  
XXX XXXXXXXXXXXXX
- RIGHT: Neither Mrs. Carter *nor* her daughters-in-law *are* working at the present time.
- (wrong): (Bob and Ted neither *smokes* or *drinks*.)  
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
- RIGHT: Bob and Ted neither *smoke* nor *drink*.
- (wrong): (A flock of Canadian geese, migrating to breeding grounds, *were* seen flying overhead this morning.)  
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
- RIGHT: A flock of Canadian geese, migrating to breeding grounds, *was* seen flying overhead this morning.
- (wrong): (When he arrived in Detroit, he complained that some luggage *were* missing.)  
XXXXXXXXX
- RIGHT: When he arrived in Detroit, he complained that some luggage *was* missing.
- RIGHT: When he arrived in Detroit, he complained that *some pieces of luggage were* missing.
- (wrong): (Sewing, knitting, and weaving are her favorite hobbies; in fact, busy as she is, either activity is usually included in her daily life.) *Either* and *neither* refer to only *two* (or two groups).  
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
- RIGHT: Sewing, knitting, and weaving are her favorite hobbies; in fact, busy as she is, *one of the activities* is usually included in her daily life.



## EXERCISE VIII. 1.

In the following sentences: (1) circle the subject or subjects of each clause; (2) underline any verbs that do not agree with the subject; (3) make corrections.

1. Jack, along with the other students, think that the campus is getting overcrowded.
2. Every year a percentage of the profits from the college plays are given to the scholarship fund for drama students.
3. Neither the boys nor Mary is going to march in the parade on Saturday.
4. One of the state senators, to whom people often expresses their discontent, have decided to try to combat the new zoning law.
5. The effects of environment versus those of heredity, a subject long argued by those studying human behavior, are still not definitely known.
6. Rice, with vegetables and pineapple, were served with the poultry dish.
7. It was reported on the news this evening that there were a good chance of thundershowers in the mountains.
8. Terry is the only one of the secretaries who still attends classes.
9. The man's harsh comments on the future of the human race were a shock to some of us.
10. In the library every painting on the walls of the reference rooms have been donated by local artists.
11. A great deal of the difficulty they are having is attributable to a lack of communication.
12. Most of the jewelry has been returned but some pieces of jewelry, apparently, has already been sold by the thieves.
13. To visit zoos that simulate the natural habitats of animals are of great interest to zoologists.
14. Most people today seem to accept the fact that the income from their jobs barely exceed their expenses.
15. Although the price of oranges have decreased, the prices of other fruit has increased.
16. Learning about people in ancient times have long interested scholars.
17. Whoever are finished with the test may leave.
18. The ornithologists have reported that a large number of birds is already extinct.
19. Neither of our daughters was interested in opera until recently.
20. Many a father have regretted not spending more time with his children when they were young.

## PRONOUN-ANTECEDENT AGREEMENT

The antecedent of a pronoun is the noun or pronoun to which the pronoun refers. The pronoun must agree with its antecedent in number, person, and gender.

*Kathy and Ann* played *their* violins for us last evening.

The *dog* with the brown and white spots appears to have hurt *its* paws.

Review the list of nouns and indefinite pronouns on page 130 to determine whether a particular noun or pronoun is a singular or a plural antecedent.

Study the following examples of pronoun-antecedent agreement.



---

**NOTE:** Pronouns that refer to antecedents of indeterminate gender include both the male and female gender. Also note that in sentences with *either/or* and *neither/nor*, the pronoun agrees in number with the antecedent closer to it.

---

1. *Each man and woman* present at the meeting presented *his or her* opinion.
2. *Neither* of them (John nor Joe) has submitted *his* report yet.
3. *None of the music* was played in *its* original form.
4. *None of the pieces* of music were played in *their* original form.
5. *Many a boy and girl* has bruised *his or her* knee riding on a skateboard.
6. *One of the women* in the group discussed *her* feelings openly.
7. *You scientists* sometimes seem unconcerned about the sociological aspects of *your* experiments.
8. Either the Goldman sisters or *Anna* will play *her* own compositions.
9. Either *Anna* or the Goldman sisters will play *their* own compositions.
10. *Both* retired from *their* jobs last year.
11. The *principal* of the school, in addition to the faculty members, gave *her* views on how to increase reading scores.
12. *None* said that *they* had visited the local observatory.
13. *No one* said that *he or she* had visited the local observatory.

*Avoid the following kinds of errors:*

(wrong): (In a letter to each depositor the Savings and Loan Company gave *their* views on  
XXXXXXXX  
 high interest rates.)

RIGHT: In a letter to each depositor the Savings and Loan Company gave *its* views on high interest rates.

(wrong): Miss Ostrow, together with her associates, expects to sign *their* names on the  
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX  
 contract some time next week.)

RIGHT: Miss Ostrow, together with her associates, expects to sign *her name* on the contract some time next week.

(wrong): (Although it was very warm in the room and the examination was very long, everybody tried to do *their* best.)  
XXXXXXXX

RIGHT: Although it was very warm in the room and the examination was very long, everybody tried to do *his and her* best.

(wrong): (We were told that neither the officers of the club nor the president would read *their* recommendations at tonight's meeting.)  
XXXXXX

RIGHT: We were told that neither the officers of the club nor the president would read *his* recommendations at tonight's meeting.

(wrong): (One of the girls has forgotten to take *their* sweater home.)  
XXXXXX

RIGHT: One of the girls has forgotten to take *her* sweater home.

**A pronoun must have a clear and specific antecedent.**

(wrong): (I removed the papers from *their* folders and threw *them* out.) The pronoun *them*  
XXXXXXXX  
 does not have a clear and specific antecedent since it is not clear whether the antecedent is *papers* or *folders*.

RIGHT: I removed the papers from *their* folders and threw the papers out.

(wrong): (When Mary ran into Bella, she was surprised.) It is not clear who was surprised.  
XXXXXX

RIGHT: When Mary ran into Bella, *Mary* was surprised.



(wrong): (Peter's motorcycle is good transportation for him.) A possessive form of the noun is *not* an antecedent.

RIGHT: Peter's motorcycle is good transportation for *Peter*.

Refer to those in a particular place as *people*, *not they*.

(wrong): (In Miami, they like to go to the beach and lie in the sun.)

RIGHT: In Miami, *people* like to go to the beach and lie in the sun.

Nouns and pronouns (not clauses or ideas) are antecedents.

(wrong): (Pamela was given responsibilities in her childhood. It led to early maturity.)

RIGHT: Pamela was given responsibilities in her childhood. This kind of experience led to early maturity.

(wrong): (My son enjoys listening to music which he often buys from the record shops.)

RIGHT: My son enjoys listening to music and he often buys records from the record shops.

Use *one* and the possessive *one's* or *his* or *her* (not *you* or *your*) when the sentence refers to people in general.

(wrong): (Health experts say that you should exercise daily in order to maintain your health.)

RIGHT: Health experts say that *one* should exercise daily in order to maintain *one's* health (or: to maintain *his* or *her* health).

Don't change the person of the pronoun from its antecedent. Don't change from *one* to *you*, or from *you* to *one*.

(wrong): (After a person works hard, they need a rest.)

RIGHT: After a person works hard, *he* or *she* needs a rest.

(wrong): (If one uses his time well, you can find time for many activities.)

RIGHT: If one uses his time well, *one* (or: he or she) can find time for many activities.

(wrong): (If you are the type of person who needs plenty of sleep, one should retire early.)

RIGHT: If you are the type of person who needs plenty of sleep, *you* should retire early.

Use the impersonal pronoun for a single animal when the sex is unknown.

(wrong): (Whose cat is she? I don't know, but she apparently is wearing her collar.)

RIGHT: Whose cat is *it*? I don't know, but *it* apparently is wearing *its* collar.

Avoid making errors with the following sound-alike words. (The first in each pair is the possessive form.)

its—it's  
whose—who's

their—they're—there  
your—you're



(wrong): Because of a disease, the tree has lost many of it's leaves.

RIGHT: Because of a disease, the tree has lost many of *its* leaves.

### EXERCISE VIII. 2.

In the following sentences: (1) circle the antecedent; (2) underline pronouns that are used erroneously; (3) make corrections.

1. Anyone who doesn't understand the lesson should ask their teacher to explain it.
2. Psychologists say that it's good for one to express your feelings.
3. Every boy and girl in the school remembered to bring his note.
4. He has traveled all over the world, which has given him understanding of other styles of life.
5. Neither of the girls would admit that they had forgotten to telephone.
6. If you're careful not to make errors, one should get a high score.
7. It's evident that many a man and woman receives little recognition for their years of service.
8. In Washington, D.C., they are proud of their historical monuments.
9. Members of the landlord's family offered its help to the new tenants.
10. She took the socks out of the shoes and put them away.
11. Somebody left his or her boots under a desk.
12. Nobody has to answer personal questions if they would rather not.
13. Each of the students has demonstrated their comprehension of the lesson.
14. In the basement there was a rat with his foot caught in a trap.
15. We were pleased that you introduced you're family to us.
16. Neither the controller, Mrs. Elton, nor her assistants have submitted their outlines for a budget.
17. When Mr. Patel's mind is occupied with worries, he doesn't function well.
18. Rene's dog, along with the other dogs on the street, rejected its food.
19. The president of the company, Mr. Tehrani, in addition to the members of the board, was not reimbursed for their expenses abroad.
20. Somehow she managed to move the piano by himself.

### TYPES OF CLAUSES AND SENTENCES

The general order of a sentence is as follows:

<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>object</i>	<i>place</i>	<i>manner</i>	<i>time</i>
She	wrote	the lesson	on the board	with green chalk	this morning.

---

NOTE: "Manner" basically tells how, by what means, with whom, how long, how much, and so on.

---

Sentences often begin with "time."

Next year Joe is going to Africa for six months to photograph lions.



For sentence variety, other forms may be used to begin sentences, such as: 1) prepositions, 2) adjectives, 3) adverbs, 4) conjunctions, 5) participles, and 6) appositives.

1. *In science class* we are learning how to analyze our experiments.
2. *Painless*, the operation takes only ten minutes.
3. *Carefully*, he plucked the thorns from the dog's face.
4. *Because* the elevator didn't function, he had to climb ten flights of stairs.
5. *Disappointed in the results*, Nick decided to try again.
6. *One of the greatest inventors* of all time, Edison was called "The Wizard of Menlo Park."

### Independent and Dependent Clauses

An *independent clause* contains a **subject and a verb and expresses a complete idea**. Every sentence must have at least one independent clause. Therefore, an independent clause, by itself, constitutes a sentence. The subject and the verb of an independent clause are called *main subject* and *main verb*.

*The telephone is ringing.*

A *dependent clause* contains a **subject and a verb but does not express a complete idea**. Therefore, a dependent clause *does not* by itself constitute a sentence. Dependent clauses begin with **adverbial conjunctions** (see Conjunctions in the next section) and relative pronouns, as shown below.

Although she was busy  
 which had been highly publicized  
 because they were interested in becoming surgeons  
 (The package,) after it had been delivered  
 (Selena), of whom he has spoken several times  
 if you don't mind waiting for me  
 when he returns to Seoul, Korea  
 where she had spent a great deal of time in her youth

### Types of Sentences

Sentences may be **simple, compound, complex, or compound-complex**. A *simple sentence* contains **one independent clause**.

*The electric light was invented by Thomas Edison in 1879.*

A *simple sentence* may have **two main subjects connected by *and* (compound subject), or two main verbs connected by *and* (compound verb), or both**.

The brushes and paint were kept in a cabinet.  
 Yesterday John cleaned the apartment and cooked the dinner.  
 Space experts and geologists examined and analyzed the rocks from the moon.

A *compound sentence* contains **two independent clauses connected by *and*, *or*, *nor*, or *but***. Words that connect independent clauses are called *correlative conjunctions*.

*The city council will meet Tuesday and the public is invited to attend.*



---

**NOTE:** Without the correlative conjunction, two sentences would be required.  
The city council will meet Tuesday. The public is invited to attend.

---

*The sky is overcast but the air is clear.*

*In tomorrow's seminar, Dr. Gooch will demonstrate and discuss new burn treatment or Dr. Gold and Dr. Yoo will debate the subject of tranquilizers.*

**A complex sentence contains one independent clause and one or more dependent clauses.**

When the sculpture was unveiled, everyone cheered.

Mr. Fuller, who has been in charge of surveys for the county, will personally inspect the site before he completes his report.

If George is selected as a delegate, he'll vote representatively, even though he doesn't like the candidate.

**A compound-complex sentence contains two or more independent clauses and one or more dependent clauses.**

We had eaten all of the rolls and relishes and we were no longer hungry by the time the main dish was served.

After the document had been sealed with an insignia that identified the owner, it was put into the company safe and the locking device was set.

He graduated with a Bachelor of Science degree but he decided, when he had reviewed career opportunities, to return for an advanced degree.

*Avoid incomplete sentences.*

(incomplete): (Since the zoning laws for new construction have been changed.)

COMPLETE: The zoning laws for new construction have been changed.

COMPLETE: Since the zoning laws for new construction have been changed, many high-rise buildings will soon be built.

(incomplete): (The problem of where to store unsold goods that people might request in the future.)

COMPLETE: There was a problem of where to store unsold goods.

COMPLETE: The problem of where to store unsold goods that people might request in the future was finally solved.

(incomplete): (Andy who was declared the most valuable player of the season.)

COMPLETE: Andy was declared the most valuable player of the season.

COMPLETE: Andy, who was declared the most valuable player of the season, was offered a job with a professional team.

COMPLETE: Andy, declared the most valuable player of the season, was offered a job with a professional team.

(incomplete): (Neil Armstrong a member of the first group of astronauts who walked on the moon.)

COMPLETE: Neil Armstrong was a member of the first group of astronauts who walked on the moon.

COMPLETE: Neil Armstrong, a member of the first group of astronauts who walked on the moon, was a hero to many.



- (incomplete): (A series of debates scheduled before the election.)  
 COMPLETE: A series of debates were scheduled before the election.  
 COMPLETE: A series of debates, scheduled before the election, helped voters to decide how they should vote.
- (incomplete): (The child listening to the story when he fell asleep.) Participles without auxiliaries are *not* verbs.  
 COMPLETE: The child was listening to the story when he fell asleep.  
 COMPLETE: Listening to the story, the child fell asleep.  
 COMPLETE: The child, listening to the story, fell asleep.

*Avoid the improper usage of "two main verbs."*

- (poor form): (The directions had been given to John were easy to follow.)  
 GOOD FORM: The directions that had been given to John were easy to follow.  
 GOOD FORM: The directions given to John were easy to follow.
- (poor form): (The naturalist observed the animals took many notes.)  
 GOOD FORM: The naturalist observed the animals and took many notes.  
 GOOD FORM: The naturalist who was observing the animals took many notes.  
 GOOD FORM: The naturalist observing the animals took many notes.  
 GOOD FORM: Observing the animals, the naturalist took many notes.
- (poor form): (Mrs. Stone's occupation is teaching computer science spoke about the commercial aspects of computers.)  
 GOOD FORM: Mrs. Stone, whose occupation is teaching computer science, spoke about the commercial aspects of computers.  
 GOOD FORM: Mrs. Stone's occupation is teaching computer science. In her lecture she spoke about the commercial aspects of computers.  
 GOOD FORM: Teacher of computer science, Mrs. Stone spoke about the commercial aspects of computers.  
 GOOD FORM: In her lecture, Mrs. Stone, teacher of computer science, spoke about the commercial aspects of computers.

*Avoid writing run-on sentences.*

When two independent clauses are connected by a comma, the result is a *run-on sentence*.

- (run-on sentence): (Some carried signs, others passed out leaflets.)  
 GOOD FORM: Some carried signs. Others passed out leaflets.  
 GOOD FORM: Some carried signs and others passed out leaflets.

---

**NOTE:** A semicolon (;) may be used to connect two independent clauses if the first independent clause is fairly short and if the second independent clause relates closely to the first.

---

- GOOD FORM: Some carried signs; other passed out leaflets.
- (run-on sentence): (A piccolo is smaller than a flute it is also pitched higher.)  
 GOOD FORM: A piccolo is smaller than a flute, and it is also pitched higher.  
 GOOD FORM: A piccolo is smaller than a flute; it is also pitched higher.
- (run-on sentence): (I didn't think the movie was very good, there were many inconsistencies.)  
 GOOD FORM: I didn't think the movie was very good because there were many inconsistencies.)



GOOD FORM: I didn't think the movie was very good. There were many inconsistencies.

GOOD FORM: I didn't think the movie was very good; there were many inconsistencies.

*Avoid omitting a subject.*

(subject omitted): (When Jeff is assigned his new post, will leave immediately for Africa.)

GOOD FORM: When Jeff is assigned his new post, he'll leave immediately for Africa.

(subject omitted): (As soon as the cable car reached the summit, descended again to the floor of the canyon.)

GOOD FORM: As soon as the cable car reached the summit, it descended again to the floor of the canyon.

(subject omitted): (He was in such a hurry when he paid the cashier, forgot to count his change.)

GOOD FORM: He was in such a hurry when he paid the cashier, he forgot to count his change.

### EXERCISE VIII. 3.

Each sentence below contains elements of poor form. Rewrite the following sentences using good sentence form.

1. According to the weather report that was issued this morning.
2. Peter realized his error quickly corrected it.
3. Because there wasn't any food in the refrigerator.
4. A video presentation prepared by the chairman of the conference.
5. After he decides what to do and where to sleep.
6. Helen was unaccustomed to dealing with customers who had complaints, she asked for assistance.
7. If they plan to collaborate, have to meet frequently.
8. If the insects aren't stopped after the farmers spray them with insecticides.
9. The girls are prepared, they know every step perfectly.
10. Myra in the blue dress and Tess in the yellow dress, playing with their dolls like two grown-up ladies.
11. Mr. Blaine, unable to achieve success quickly.
12. A distinguished American writer of the nineteenth century, Ralph Waldo Emerson who had been in demand as a lecturer.
13. When they complete the study program that they have been taking, can apply for college credit.
14. Coral skeleton is beautiful, people make jewelry out of it.
15. She expressed her appreciation to everyone had helped her.
16. The book written by the author when he was only fifteen.
17. Although the polar bear lives in an extremely cold climate, doesn't hibernate.
18. The composer's recent opera was performed last night made a strong impression on the audience.
19. The director explaining as he showed the film.
20. The plan to consolidate had been discussed for many weeks, was unexpectedly rejected.



## USING CONJUNCTIONS

Conjunctions are used to combine thoughts and to extend sentences.

When Steve and Fred had a vacation, they went to Italy *so that* they could learn about Italian art; *in addition*, they were eager to improve their conversational skills in the Italian language.

## Kinds of Conjunctions

*Correlative conjunctions* (connectors) join words, phrases, and clauses with *and*, *or*, *nor*, *but*.

Last night I washed my hair *and* I wrote a letter to my sister.

Mary *or* John will meet you at the airport.

The cat is neither in the kitchen *nor* in the dining room.

Linda likes jazz *but* Rita prefers country music.

*Adverbial conjunctions* introduce dependent adverbial clauses which tell more about the independent clause. Some of these are *because*, *since*, *so that*, *so*, *although*, *even though*, *before*, *when*, *while*, *since*, *as soon as*, *after*, *if*, *unless*, *until*. **Adverbial clauses may precede or follow the independent clause.**

*As soon as* Victor arrived, he rented a car.

He'll telephone them *when* he arranges his schedule.

*Transitional conjunctions* introduce the second of two independent clauses which tells more about the first independent clause. Transitional conjunctions include *therefore*, *consequently*, *as a result*, *however*, *nevertheless*, *in addition*, *furthermore*, *moreover*, *besides that*, *as a matter of fact*, *in fact*, *otherwise*, *for instance*, *on the other hand*, *on the contrary*, *later*, *afterwards*. **Transitional conjunctions must be preceded by a semicolon when used to extend a sentence.**

He didn't know the meaning of the word; *therefore* he looked it up.

---

**NOTE:** Transitional conjunctions may begin a new sentence or may be used at different points in the sentence.

---

He didn't know the meaning of the word. *Therefore*, he looked it up.

He didn't know the meaning of the word. He *therefore* looked it up.

He didn't know the meaning of the word. He looked it up, *therefore*.

## Some Common Conjunctions

Below are examples of conjunctions under general classified headings. Notice the punctuation. Wherever you see a semicolon, you may, instead, begin a new sentence. Notice how the verb tenses in the clauses "go with" each other.

## Time

1. Columbus had to wait seven years *before* he was given ships and supplies.
2. *When* the economy is uncertain, people tend to spend less.



3. *Since* he graduated, Tom has been working for an engineering firm.
4. The mirror fell and broke *while* Hector was hanging it on the wall.
5. *As soon as* the snowplow clears the snow, the road will be open.
6. *After* the law is revised, import restrictions will be removed.
7. Feeling tired, Ben took a nap; *later* he resumed working.
8. They talked for about an hour; *afterwards* they took a walk.

#### Reason, Cause

1. Consumers are interested in solar energy *because* they want to save on fuel costs.

---

**NOTE:** Prepositional phrases are sometimes used instead of conjunctive clauses.

Consumers are interested in solar energy *because of* high fuel costs.

2. *Since* he had never studied English, he enrolled in the first level.
3. She lost a lot of weight *due to the fact* that she had been ill (*also due to her illness*).
4. *Inasmuch as* no witnesses appeared, Bernard lost the case.

#### Purpose

1. A detour was posted *so that* cars would not travel over the freshly paved roads.

#### Result

1. Peter didn't like his job; *therefore* he quit.
2. There are many industries in that area; *consequently*, unemployment is low.
3. The road was blocked *so* they had to take another route.
4. He hadn't studied for the test; *as a result*, he failed it.
5. The bridge had been carelessly constructed; *thus* a disaster occurred.

**Conditional and Qualifying Situations** (Think of *although* as "before the fact" and *however* as "after the fact.")

1. *Although* she has had little experience, she has been effective.
2. She has had little experience; *however*, she has been effective.
3. The firm refuses to endorse the shipment *unless* an agreement is reached.
4. You had better take an umbrella *in case* it begins to rain. (*also: in case of rain*)
5. They dissolved their partnership a year ago *but* they have remained friends.
6. Hakto plays the banjo very well *even though* he has never had lessons.
7. She read the entire contents; she didn't, *however*, understand the meaning.
8. There had been agreement on most points; *nevertheless*, certain conflicts persisted.
9. *Considering the fact* that he has had little education, he feels fortunate to have such a good job. (*also: considering his lack of education*) (*also: considering that he has had little education*)
10. Ahman is a happy man *in spite of the fact* that he is handicapped. (*also: in spite of being handicapped*)
11. *Despite the fact* that meat was scarce, they had a healthful diet. (*also: Despite the scarcity of meat*)
12. Transportation facilities may improve *if* the proposition is passed.

#### Addition

1. Tai's wife has been writing a book; *in addition*, she works in the research library every evening.



2. We're not prepared for our trip; *furthermore*, we haven't received our passports yet.
3. I have never gone deep-sea diving; *moreover*, I'm afraid to try it.
4. He sings and dances very well; *besides that*, he plays the piano.
5. The judge put her on probation *and* made her attend lectures on safe driving.
6. People appear to be careful of what they eat; *also* they exercise more than they used to.

#### Clarification-Explanation

1. Jenny took flying lessons last year; *as a matter of fact*, she has become an accomplished pilot.
2. Mrs. Chekjian's daughter is often absent; *in fact* she has missed a month of school this semester.
3. She should go to the dentist; *otherwise*, her toothache might get worse.
4. He had better get some sleep *or else* he'll fall asleep in class.
5. He's careless about his personal possessions; *for instance*, he has lost three cameras in the last two years.
6. She's very creative; *for example*, she designed the stage set for the community opera last month.
7. He has a philosophical outlook; *that is*, he accepts life as it is.
8. We couldn't decide what to do. A vacation at the beach sounded very appealing to us; *on the other hand*, we also considered going to the mountains.
9. Some people think he's lazy; *on the contrary*, he's very industrious.
10. She looked as if she were having fun; *actually*, she was bored.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong:) (Pei studied medicine so she could help her people.) So refers to "result."

RIGHT: Pei studies medicine *so that* she could help her people.

(wrong:) (The two nations met to discuss a pact; therefore they couldn't agree.)

RIGHT: The two nations met to discuss a pact; *however*, they couldn't agree.

(wrong:) (Although the road was narrow, but the cars could pass each other.)

RIGHT: Although the road was narrow, the cars could pass each other.

#### EXERCISE VIII. 4.

Identify the type of clause (independent or dependent) and the type of conjunction (correlative, adverbial, or transitional) in each of the sentences listed under Some Common Conjunctions, p. 111, 112, 113.

#### EXERCISE VIII. 5.

Combine the following ideas, as in example number 1, using an appropriate conjunction under the heading suggested in the parentheses. Use a different conjunction in each case. (Check your punctuation.)

1. She went to bed early. She didn't sleep well. (qualify)  
She went to bed early but she didn't sleep well.
2. Rosa likes to read poetry. She sometimes writes her own poetry. (addition)
3. She eats only low-calorie food. She wants to remain slim. (reason)
4. Lincoln had been a successful lawyer. He became president. (time)
5. Dr. Jenner developed a vaccine for smallpox. Many people were saved. (result)
6. I didn't carry an umbrella. I got wet. (result)
7. Some think that he is unfriendly. He likes people very much. (clarification)



8. Leo arose at 6:00 A.M. He hasn't eaten anything. (time)
9. It's rude to keep people waiting unnecessarily. It's a waste of valuable time. (addition)
10. We'd better hurry. We'll miss the train. (clarification)
11. He was lecturing about the mysteries of the mind. He dropped his notes. (time)
12. Doctors state that exercise is beneficial. One should not overdo it. (quality)
13. Ingredients must be listed on food products. People will be able to buy wisely. (purpose)
14. Programs showing violence may be harmful to children. Many parents want such programs removed from television. (reason)
15. She won't enroll next fall. She can get a college loan. (conditional)
16. Mark is a marvelous potter. Many of his pieces have been shown in the Frank Lloyd Wright exhibition house. (clarification)
17. The bay has become contaminated with chemicals. It is not safe to eat the fish from the bay. (result)
18. He slept eleven hours last night. He is still tired. (qualify)

## EXERCISE VIII. 6.

Complete the following sentences with logical ideas. Be sure that the verb tense in the second clause is compatible with *the verb tense* in the first clause.

1. Our basketball team didn't play well; therefore, \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Jafar doesn't dance very well; on the other hand, \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Meat was less expensive than fish so \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Frank managed to get a good grade in spite of the fact \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Serena has stopped smoking; in addition, \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I thought the dog was going to bite me; on the contrary, \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The dentist told the child to hold very still so that \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The bridge must be strengthened; otherwise, \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Harold wasn't enjoying the play; however, \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The employees agreed to take a salary decrease even though \_\_\_\_\_.
11. The lights went out because \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The heavy snowstorm damaged some of the roofs; furthermore, \_\_\_\_\_.
13. We won't need a car when we get there since \_\_\_\_\_.
14. They plan to do some traveling before leaving the United States; in fact, \_\_\_\_\_.
15. Her friend is very talented. She not only speaks several languages, but also \_\_\_\_\_.

## ESTABLISHING A VIEWPOINT; TENSE CONSISTENCY

Tenses in a sentence or in a paragraph must be compatible with each other. Select a tense in the time of the action. The verb tense in the first clause establishes time. Don't change to another time period unless the time of the action changes. Time changes are often indicated by words such as: *yesterday, a short time ago, in 1776, last month, formerly, used to, earlier, recently, in the past, at the present time, now, today, this week, in the future, next week, by next month, in October*, and so forth. Compare the following forms:

- (poor form): (Some churches now require couples who wanted to get married to wait for six months. During that time, the couples received counseling.



The church hopes that by this method the divorce rate would be reduced in future years.)

**GOOD FORM:** Some churches now *require* couples who *want* to get married to wait for six months. During that time, the couples *receive* counseling. The church *hopes* that by this method the divorce rate *will be reduced* in future years.

(poor form): (Mr. Pachuki *used to prefer* to travel by train. He likes the fact that he can rest and work while he was en route to a business appointment. However, presently he is retired and travels only for pleasure. Generally, he flew to whatever country he wishes to visit.)

**GOOD FORM:** Mr. Pachuki *used to prefer* to travel by train. He *liked* the fact that he *could* rest and work while he *was* en route to a business appointment. However, presently he *is retired* and *travels* only for pleasure. Generally he *flies* to whatever country he *wishes* to visit.

### EXERCISE VIII. 7.

In the sentences or short paragraphs below, underline the verb tenses that do not conform to the verb tense in the first sentence, and make corrections.

1. Carl gets up early every morning. He cooks his breakfast and prepared a lunch before he left for work.
2. There were only ten seconds left in the quarter. Smith throws a long pass to Jones who runs until he scores a touchdown.
3. I had a long conversation with Jackie yesterday. She tells me that she went to Canada last month. In fact, she plans to return there again next summer if her boss gave her a long vacation.
4. Living in London, even if the rate of exchange is better these days, is very expensive. Before you bought anything, you should go to several department stores to learn what range of prices and products were available.
5. Edgar, taking pictures with his new camera, was working quickly. He is afraid that the sun would set before he has a chance to finish the roll of film.
6. The art teacher, Mr. Aok, has planned a field trip for us. Next week we are going to watch a professional sculptor at work. We would be able to observe the manner in which he used a chisel and hammer to carve the wood.
7. A home tour has been planned for next Sunday. Many contemporary houses would be featured. In addition, there is a guide who explains the architectural details of each house. By the end of the tour, those of us who expect to go learn a lot about architecture.

### USING PARTICIPLES AND PHRASES

We often use a shortened form of expression in the place of a dependent clause. The shortened form of expression may be a participle or a participial phrase, a prepositional phrase, an infinitive phrase, an appositive or an appositive phrase, an adjective or an adjective phrase, or an adverbial phrase. In the sentences below, compare the sentences containing dependent clauses with those containing the shortened forms. When a phrase is used to describe a noun or a pronoun, it must be placed before or after the word that it describes.

**Clause:** Mr. McBride, who was sleeping soundly, didn't hear the telephone ring.



<i>Participial phrase:</i>	<i>Sleeping soundly</i> , Mr. McBride didn't hear the telephone ring.
<i>Also:</i>	Mr. McBride, <i>sleeping soundly</i> , didn't hear the telephone ring.
<b>Clause:</b>	Fausto walked into the office <b>which was at the end of the hall</b> .
<i>Prepositional phrase:</i>	Fausto walked into the office <i>at the end of the hall</i> .
<b>Clause:</b>	Bob went to the library <b>so that he could study in a quiet place</b> .
<i>Infinitive phrase:</i>	<i>To study in a quiet place</i> (or: In order to study in a quiet place), Bob went to the library.
<b>Clause:</b>	Eleanor Roosevelt, who was a remarkable woman in many respects, contributed a great deal to humane causes.
<i>Appositive phrase:</i>	<i>A remarkable woman in many respects</i> , Eleanor Roosevelt contributed a great deal to humane causes.
<i>Also:</i>	Eleanor Roosevelt, <i>a remarkable woman in many respects</i> , contributed a great deal to humane causes.
<b>Clause:</b>	The drapes had to be replaced <b>because they were old and no longer attractive</b> .
<i>Adjective phrase:</i>	<i>Old and no longer attractive</i> , the drapes had to be replaced.
<i>Also:</i>	The drapes, <i>old and no longer attractive</i> , had to be replaced.
<b>Clause:</b>	When you are in doubt, (you) check the answers.
<i>Adverbial phrase:</i>	<i>When in doubt</i> , (you) check the answers.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

- (wrong): (An instruction handbook is available to the consumers from the manufacturer.)  
 RIGHT: An instruction *handbook from the manufacturer* is available to the consumers.
- (wrong): (Customers were disappointed who had patronized the store for several years  
 when it went out of business.)  
 RIGHT: *Customers who had patronized the store for several years* were disappointed when it went out of business.
- (wrong): (When only in grade school, Nick's artistic talent was apparent.)  
 RIGHT: *When only in grade school*, Nick displayed artistic talent.
- (wrong): (Complete with diagrams, she had no difficulty assembling the bookcase.)  
 RIGHT: *Complete with diagrams*, the bookcase was easy for her to assemble.
- (wrong): (Collecting seashells as he strolled along the beach, identifying them became a  
 challenge to Harry.)  
 RIGHT: *Collecting seashells as he strolled along the beach*, Harry found that identifying them was a challenge.
- (wrong): (A versatile person, many hobbies attracted Ellie.)  
 RIGHT: *A versatile person*, Ellie was attracted to many hobbies.  
 RIGHT: Many hobbies attracted *Ellie, a versatile person*.

#### Modifying Adjective Phrases with Participles

The present participle, the perfect participle, and the perfect passive participle may each be used in phrases modifying nouns and pronouns. Notice, in the following sentences, **adjective phrases often show cause and effect**.

• Use the present participle (*-ing form*) when the action in the adjective phrase is *active and occurs at the time of the main verb action*. In the following sentences, compare the phrases with the clauses.

While Grandpa Rubin was softly singing a Russian folk song, he carried the child to bed.



*Softly singing a Russian folk song*, Grandpa Rubin carried the child to bed.

Polly saw a big black bird when she was looking out of the window.

*Polly, looking out of the window*, saw a big black bird.

Doris didn't leave with the others because she hoped to complete the experiment.

*Hoping to complete the experiment*, Doris didn't leave with the others.

Most of those who were buying goods at the auction were dealers.

Most of those *buying goods at the auction* were dealers.

The instructor dismissed the students who had to rehearse for the play.

The instructor dismissed the students *having to rehearse for the play*.

Since Marvin was a doctor, he rushed over to help the accident victim.

*Being a doctor*, Marvin rushed over to help the accident victim.

**NOTE:** The present participle may be used after the time words: *when, since, before, while, after*.

After Randy registered for college, he applied for a room in the dormitory.

*After registering for college*, Randy applied for a room in the dormitory.

Since Jae spoke with his counselor, he has learned about other career choices.

*Since speaking with his counselor*, Jae has learned about other career choices.

The company president has delayed making a decision because he is anxious to consider alternatives.

*Being anxious to consider alternatives*, the company president has delayed making a decision.

*Also: Anxious to consider alternatives*, the company president has delayed making a decision.

(*Being* may or may not precede the adjective; the meaning is the same.)

Although the machine still functioned, we didn't think it was practical to use.

*Although still functioning*, the machine, we thought, was not practical to use.

**NOTE:** Notice, in the sentence directly above, the adjective phrase "although still functioning" refers to the word "machine." Therefore the word "machine" has been placed next to the adjective phrase. An incorrectly placed adjective phrase is called a "dangling modifier."

Use the perfect participle (*having plus the past participle*) when the action is *active* and when it *was completed before the main verb action*. In the following sentences compare the phrases with the original clauses.

Dr. Ray was accepted for the position because he had passed the qualifying test.

*Having passed the qualifying test*, Dr. Ray was accepted for the position.

Mrs. Oliverio, who had received a bonus check, was able to purchase a new typewriter.

Mrs. Oliverio, *having received a bonus check*, was able to purchase a new typewriter.

Mr. Cawley had been a fireman at one time, so he knew exactly what to do when the fire broke out in the laboratory.



When the fire broke out in the laboratory, Mr. Cawley, *having been a fireman at one time*, knew exactly what to do.

After Raissa had resigned from the police force, a real estate agent persuaded her to enroll in a real estate training class.

*After having resigned* from the police force, Raissa was persuaded to enroll in a real estate training class.

Also: *After resigning* from the police force, Raissa was persuaded to enroll in a real estate training class.

Also: *Having resigned from the police force*, Raissa was persuaded to enroll in a real estate training class.

Use the perfect passive participle (*having been* plus the past participle) when the action is passive and occurs usually earlier than the main verb action.

George, who was chosen by the student council to give the graduation speech, is considering the subject of space exploration.

George, *having been chosen by the student council to give the graduation speech*, may talk about space exploration.

---

**NOTE:** *Having been* may be omitted. The meaning is the same. Compare:

---

George, *chosen by the student council to give the graduation speech*, may talk about space exploration.

Since the computer had not been fed the correct information, a serious error was made by the company.

*Not having been fed the correct information*, the computer caused a serious error to be made by the company.

*Not fed* the correct information, the computer caused a serious error to be made by the company.

The plants, which had been sadly neglected, appeared unhealthy and diseased.

*Having been sadly neglected*, the plants appeared unhealthy and diseased.

*Sadly neglected*, the plants appeared unhealthy and diseased.

The taxi driver hadn't been given directions; therefore he didn't know where to go.

The taxi driver, *not having been given directions*, didn't know where to go.

The taxi driver, *not given directions*, didn't know where to go.

Although the Watts Tower was built from discarded materials, people think it's beautiful.

*Although built from discarded materials*, the Watts Tower is considered beautiful.

*Avoid the following kinds of errors:*

(wrong): (Announced as the winner of the scholarship, everybody congratulated Dimitri.)

\*\*\*\*\*  
The adjective phrase is a "dangling modifier." It does not describe the word next to it.

RIGHT: *Announced as the winner of the scholarship*, Dimitri was congratulated by everybody.

RIGHT: Everybody congratulated Dimitri, *announced as the winner of the scholarship*.



- (wrong): (After working all day, the painting was finally finished.) *The painting*, (above) did not "work all day"; the adjective phrase refers to a person.  
 RIGHT: *After working all day*, the artist finally finished the painting.

NOTE: Don't use past participles after the time words: *after*, *before*, *since*, *while*.

- (wrong): (Before left, she locked the door.)  
 RIGHT: Before *leaving*, she locked the door.

Exception: *When* is sometimes used with a past participle.

*When taken* with milk, the medicine is more effective.

clause: *When it is taken* with milk, the medicine is more effective.

- (wrong): (Since came to the United States, she has been living with her cousin.)  
 RIGHT: Since *coming* to the United States, she has been living with her cousin.

### Additional Uses of Participles and Phrases

Present and past participles are used to describe and extend the verb action.

The president **drove** through the streets *weaving to the crowd*.

Mrs. Sapolsky **returned** to school last month, *motivated by the promise of a job*.

*Miss Valdez sorted out* all the paintings, *selecting a few to hang on the classroom walls*.

Every day Jill **walks** to her shop *accompanied by her dog Star*.

Present participles are used to extend adjective descriptions.

Cindy felt **wonderful** *relaxing on the beach*.

It was very **pleasant** *being carried into the air by the big balloon*.

When I got home, my husband was **busy** *writing letters to his nephews*.

She looked **warm** *wearing a fur coat on a summer's day*.

NOTE: Not all adjectives can be followed by present participles. Present participles are used, as in the above, to describe "a state of being." For the most part, infinitives are used "to proceed with an action."

She was **anxious** *to see* her friend.

I will be **happy** *to help* you.

It's **important** *to pursue* a career that you will enjoy.

Infinitive phrases of purpose that begin a sentence must be placed next to the noun or pronoun to which they refer.

*To qualify for the secretarial position*, Joanne has been renewing her skills.

(wrong): (*To qualify for the secretarial position*, her skills need to be renewed.)

*To achieve a goal*, one must work hard.

(wrong): (*To achieve a goal*, hard work is necessary.)



Avoid the following kinds of errors:

- (wrong): (Searched for treasure, robbers in ancient Egypt disturbed the majority of the kings' tombs.)  
 RIGHT: *Searching for treasure*, robbers in ancient Egypt disturbed the majority of the kings' tombs.
- (wrong): (Monthly financial reports, carefully reviewing and analyzing, were instrumental in the manager's business procedures.)  
 RIGHT: Monthly financial reports, *carefully reviewed and analyzed*, were instrumental in the manager's business procedures.
- (wrong): (The ancient Greeks, had a great sense of beauty, left the world magnificent works of art and architecture.)  
 RIGHT: The ancient Greeks, *having had a great sense of beauty*, left the world magnificent works of art and architecture.
- (wrong): (Originally hired as a salesman, Mr. Craig's position was changed within a month.)  
 RIGHT: Originally hired as a salesman, *Mr. Craig* was changed to another position within a month.
- (wrong): (After introduced the auditor to some of the office staff, the manager accompanied him to the file room.)  
 RIGHT: *After introducing* the auditor to some of the office staff, the manager accompanied him to the file room.
- (wrong): (To brighten up the room, the walls were painted yellow.)  
 RIGHT: To brighten up the room, *she* painted the walls yellow.
- (wrong): (My car, having painted and polished, looks as if it were new.)  
 RIGHT: My car, *having been painted and polished*, looks as if it were new.
- RIGHT: My car, *painted and polished*, looks as if it were new.
- (wrong): (Sleeping several hours, Bea and Mark were ready to resume the tour.)  
 RIGHT: *Having slept* several hours, Bea and Mark were ready to resume the tour.

### EXERCISE VIII. 8.

Each of the following sentences contains an error. The modifying phrase has been incorrectly placed, or the noun or pronoun to which the phrase refers does not appear next to the phrase, or an incorrect participle has been used. Correct and rewrite each sentence. When necessary, alter the wording for good form, but do not change the participial phrases to clauses.

1. When only a child, his father taught Andy the names of plants and trees.  
*When only a child, Andy was taught the names of plants and trees by his father.*
2. To estimate the success of such a project, a computer was used.
3. Stopped for speeding, the policeman gave Roger a ticket.
4. While having drunk a cup of coffee, Tom spilled it on his homework.
5. Being in a hurry, the route Bill took was through the desert.
6. The table, having made from cherry wood, was, I thought, beautiful.
7. The importer considered many items tried to find one that would sell well.
8. Liano, reporting his dog lost, is searching the city streets for him.
9. Considerably improved, Ed believes his invention will be a success.
10. Before taken the test, the students were given instructions.
11. To earn extra money, it was necessary for Peggy to work overtime.
12. Viewing from afar, the rock formations looked like buildings.



13. The medical advice was appreciated by the patients which the clinic offered.
14. A retired pilot, the new airport installations were of course of great interest to Mr. Sjoberg.

### EXERCISE VIII. 9.

Change the dependent clauses in the sentences below to adjective phrases. Notice (as in the first example, which is done for you) that the noun to which the phrase refers is identified in the independent clause.

1. Members of law enforcement agencies met yesterday because they wanted to explore methods of reducing drug-related crimes.  
*Wanting to explore methods of reducing drug-related crimes, members of law enforcement agencies met yesterday.*
2. Coal, which was actually formed from plants thousands of years ago, has been an important source of energy for the United States.
3. When people rushed to find gold in 1848, they neglected their farms, families, and businesses.
4. Since Mel had read many books on raising children, he thought he was an expert.
5. After the novel had been promoted by the publisher, it sold widely.
6. Sima has great knowledge of glacier movement because she's a geologist.
7. When the two men agreed on the price of the car, they shook hands.
8. The Constitution, which was written after the American states had won their independence, is considered to be a remarkable historical document.
9. Since Carl is a carpenter, he knows how to repair his own roof.
10. An analyst for the aerospace industry, Miss Reuter will show charts that demonstrate recent advances.

### PARALLEL STRUCTURE

Use similar forms and structures (matching construction) for related combinations of words, phrases, and clauses.

To join related combinations, use correlative conjunctions: *and, but, than, or, and nor*.

Carol knows *how to interpret abstract ideas and how to write fine essays*.

To connect a related series, use commas.

This morning Gina *baked a pie, cleaned the house, prepared the dinner, and did her homework*.

Analyze the following sentences. Notice the similarity of form on each side of the conjunction (connector). Parallel structure is used to avoid unnecessary wordiness and to give good balance, form, and clarity to the sentence.

1. Betty opened the window *and* closed the door.  
(poor form): (Betty opened the window and has closed the door.)
2. The children enjoy playing in the sand *and* swimming in the ocean.  
(poor form): (The children enjoy playing in the sand and they like to swim in the ocean.)
3. The island we visited was beautiful *but* crowded.  
(poor form): (The island we visited was beautiful but there were too many people.)



4. Mary types slowly *but* accurately.  
(poor form): Mary types slowly but she is accurate.
5. Sydney would rather read *than* watch television.  
(poor form): (Sydney would rather read than to watch television.)
6. On Sunday David wants to play tennis, wash his car, *and* take a walk.  
(poor form): (On Sunday, David wants to play tennis; he would like to wash his car also and not only that, he wants to take a walk.)
7. The environmentalists had a discussion on improving conservation, increasing energy, *and* eliminating pollution.  
(poor form): (The environmentalists had a discussion on improving conservation, and how to increase energy, and the elimination of pollution.)
8. To listen to fine music *and* to have stimulating conversation with good friends are two pleasures in life.  
(poor form): (To listen to fine music and having stimulating conversation with good friends are two pleasures in life.)
9. They explained that they had seen the Statue of Liberty *but* that they hadn't been able to see the World Trade Center.  
(poor form): (They explained that they had seen the Statue of Liberty but weren't able to see the World Trade Center.)

---

**NOTES:** Words common to each side of the connector must be repeated when the verb tense changes, when the positive changes to negative (or vice versa), and when different verbs are used to compare a single subject.

---

10. Perle wrote *that they had received our invitation and that they would attend*.  
(poor form): (Perle wrote that they had received our invitation and would attend.)
11. Many species of begonia *don't grow well in full sun but they grow well in shade* (Also: *but they do grow well in shade*).  
(poor form): (Many species of begonia don't grow well in full sun but in shade.)
12. *Jose writes better than he speaks*.  
(poor form): (Jose writes better than speaks.)
13. He left early, *not because he was bored, but because he had to be home by ten o'clock*.  
(poor form): (He left early, not because he was bored, but he had to be home by ten o'clock.)

---

**NOTE:** Repeat "key" words, such as in the following sentences.

---

14. She knows *how to fly an airplane and how to navigate a boat*.  
(poor form): (She knows how to fly an airplane and knows to navigate a boat.)
15. Marie was delighted with *how well Meg arranged flowers and how well she composed music*.  
(poor form): (Maria was delighted with how well Meg arranged flowers and how she composed music.)
16. He bought *a desk and a lamp for his room*.  
(poor form): (He bought a desk and lamp for his room.)
17. Amy is going to take next semester off *so that she can gather some data for her thesis and so that she can meet people in her field*.  
(poor form): (Amy is going to take next semester off so that she can gather some data for her thesis and so she can meet people in her field.)
18. Fred came home early not only *because he had to get a haircut but also because he had to go to the bank*.



(poor form): (Fred came home early not only because he had to get a haircut but also he had to go to the bank.)

---

NOTE: Don't repeat unnecessarily.

---

19. Janie told us that every day she painted pictures and played with blocks.  
 (poor form): (Janie told us that every day she painted pictures and that she played with blocks.)
20. Shura is pleased that she has learned to speak and read in a second language.  
 (poor form): (Shura is pleased that she has learned to speak and learned to read in a second language.)

### Special Word Order

The following words must be placed *near the word or words they describe*: *not, only, both, either, neither, not only . . . but also*.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

Look for the pairs of nouns, verbs, or other elements.

(wrong): (She not only baked an apple pie but also a lemon pie.)

RIGHT: She baked **not only** an apple pie **but also** a lemon pie.

(wrong): (She baked not only a lemon pie but she cooked a big dinner.)

RIGHT: She **not only** baked a lemon pie **but she also** cooked a big dinner.

(wrong): (She is both a person of great talent and immense charm.)

RIGHT: She is a person **both** of great talent **and** immense charm.

(wrong): (Peter only works six hours a day.)

RIGHT: Peter works **only** six hours a day (also: **just** six hours a day; also: **but** six hours a day).

(wrong): (You must either visit me or I will visit you.)

RIGHT: **Either** you must visit me **or** I will visit you.

(wrong): (Roger neither saw a bird nor a flower when he was in prison.)

RIGHT: Roger saw **neither** a bird **nor** a flower when he was in prison.

(wrong): (Roger saw neither a bird nor smelled a flower when he was in prison.)

RIGHT: Roger **neither** saw a bird **nor** smelled a flower when he was in prison.

(wrong): (Everyone is not here yet.)

RIGHT: **Not everyone** is here yet.

(wrong): (Mrs. Marcus grew both gardenias as well as azaleas.)

RIGHT: Mrs. Marcus grew **both** gardenias **and** azaleas.

RIGHT: Mrs. Marcus grew gardenias **as well as** (or: **and**) azaleas.

(wrong): (The book is not only interesting but enlightening.)

RIGHT: The book is **not only** interesting **but also** enlightening.

### EXERCISE VIII. 10.

Correct the following sentences using appropriate parallel structure.

- The office supplies have arrived; paper clips, pencils, file folders, and the stationery is here too.



2. She doesn't like raw oysters but likes raw clams.
3. Let's visit the art gallery first, and then afterwards, having some lunch.
4. One should look over a document carefully before signing and to get advice when needed.
5. When I saw them, he was riding his motorcycle and Gloria rode behind him.
6. He found it not only annoying to be asked for identification each time but insulting.
7. Professor Johnson reported that he had completed the experiment and wrote the conclusions for a scientific journal.
8. Her exercises include bending, stretching, and she also she walks alot.
9. Byron can speak Chinese but not write it.
10. Their insurance program covers dental and medicine expenses.
11. To balance the budget and providing jobs are two goals of the elected official.
12. Willa hasn't had an opportunity yet to work outside of her home because of marrying at an early age and she had to take care of her three young children.
13. It was no easy task to arrange visas, find living quarters, and in addition preparing a program suitable for everyone.
14. It would be wise of her not to interfere and worry about his plans.
15. To be an effective teacher, one needs to know how to convey the material and to determine whether or not it has been understood.
16. A fanatic neither is moderate in his views nor tolerant of other people's views.
17. Not everyone has the same opinion on that issue but can at least listen carefully to another person's opinion.
18. That couple is both attractive as well as successful.
19. A well-rounded musician should be able to play music, arrange music, and also composing music is a good thing to be able to do.
20. Traveling by covered wagon in the early days of America was uncomfortable and it was dangerous as well.
21. The charges were dropped because there wasn't enough evidence and also the prosecutors decided not to pursue the case.
22. The new machinery polishes better than cuts.

#### EXERCISE VIII. 11.

Combine each line into one sentence using the words in the parentheses. Omit any unnecessary words.

1. Arches, used architecturally, are strong. They are beautiful. (both)
2. An arbitrator listens to both sides in an argument. He helps people come to an agreement. (not only, but also)
3. A neutral substance isn't acidic. Also, it isn't alkaline. (neither, nor)
4. Arnold will attend graduate school. He will teach a class. (both)
5. The company promised to repair the product. If not, they promised to send a replacement. (either, or)
6. He didn't receive compensation. He didn't receive any acknowledgment. (not only, but also)
7. The play was excellent. The play was beautifully performed. (not only, but also)

#### BASIC RULES OF WRITTEN EXPRESSION

Don't use words and expressions that repeat what you have already expressed, such as *more* with *additional*, *very* with *highly*, *quiet* with *peaceful*, *repeat* with *again*.



- (poor form): (A few students in the college preparatory course want to repeat the course again.)
- GOOD FORM: A few students in the college preparatory course want to repeat the course.
- (poor form): (I'm glad that Stephen arrived in time to see his friends before they left.)
- GOOD FORM: I'm glad that Stephen arrived in time to see his friends.
- (poor form): (World hunger is a serious problem because many people in the world don't have enough to eat.)
- GOOD FORM: World hunger is a serious problem.
- (poor form): (That professor is very highly thought of.)
- GOOD FORM: That professor is *highly* thought of.

Write in a clear, direct style. Avoid writing awkward, wordy, complicated sentences. Be concise! Get to the point!

- (poor form): (To be sure of having a place to stay, one should, when visiting a foreign city, make a hotel reservation before traveling there.)
- GOOD FORM: Before traveling to a foreign city, one should make a hotel reservation.
- (poor form): (A number of western nations have decided not to have capital punishment anymore because they feel the death penalty doesn't really do much good and besides that, they think it's cruel.)
- GOOD FORM: A number of western nations, considering capital punishment both cruel and ineffectual, no longer practice capital punishment.

Don't repeat a noun with a pronoun.

- (wrong): (The concert that we attended it was excellent.)
- RIGHT: The concert that we attended was excellent.
- (wrong): (Our friends they gave us an anniversary party last month.)
- RIGHT: Our friends gave us an anniversary party last month.
- (wrong): (The coral trees on the boulevard, after they had been trimmed, they grew healthier.)
- RIGHT: The coral trees on the boulevard, after they had been trimmed, grew healthier.

Don't use pronouns "this" or "that" to refer to preceding ideas or statements. Such reference must be *clearly stated*.

- (poor form): (Anticipating an easy victory, the candidate didn't bother to campaign. Later she regretted that.)
- GOOD FORM: Anticipating an easy victory, the candidate didn't bother to campaign. Later she regretted that action.
- GOOD FORM: Anticipating an easy victory, the candidate didn't bother to campaign. Later she regretted not having campaigned. or: Later she regretted that she hadn't campaigned.

Don't use a double negative.



- (wrong): (The child, being of an independent nature, didn't want ~~nobody~~ to help him.)  
 RIGHT: The child, being of an independent nature, didn't want *anybody* to help him.  
 (wrong): (If the builders had known that the land was unstable, they wouldn't have, I'm  
 sure, never built houses on that site.)  
 RIGHT: If the builders had known that the land was unstable, they wouldn't have, I'm  
 sure, built houses on that site.

Use the correct part of speech. See Suffixes, p. 84 and p. 99.

- (wrong): (The exposed wire caused Sally to get an ~~electricity~~ shock.)  
 RIGHT: The exposed wire caused Sally to get an *electric* shock.

Arrange words, phrases, and clauses of a sentence in a concise, logical order so that the meaning is clear. Generally speaking, maintain the sentence order: subject, verb, object, place, manner, time.

- (poor form): (He worked for seven months last year in a gas station.)  
 GOOD FORM: He worked in a gas station for seven months last year.  
 (poor form): (Four times they have visited in the past year Disneyland.)  
 GOOD FORM: They have visited Disneyland four times in the past year.  
 (poor form): (The flowers are on the table which are beautiful.)  
 GOOD FORM: The flowers which are on the table are beautiful.

For the most part, use active-voiced clauses rather than passive-voiced clauses.

- (poor form): (When we were at the beach yesterday, a beautiful sunset was seen.)  
 GOOD FORM: When we were at the beach yesterday, we saw a beautiful sunset.  
 (poor form): (The play that was seen by our friends concerned a biography of Disraeli.)  
 GOOD FORM: Our friends saw a play about the life of Disraeli.

Separate ideas into well-constructed sentences, using proper punctuation.

- (poor form): (Last week a convention of the Society of American Architects was held in San Francisco one of the speakers presently associated with a local firm spoke about the innovations of architecture in the past decade.)  
 GOOD FORM: Last week a convention of the Society of American Architects was held in San Francisco. One of the speakers, presently associated with a local firm, spoke about the innovations of architecture in the past decade.

In formal writing, avoid using slang and colloquial expressions such as *broke* (without funds), *cop* (police officer), *cool* (good), *creepy* (frightening), *dope* (drugs).

- (poor form): (The rock concert was ~~real cool~~.)  
 GOOD FORM: The rock concert was very good.

Use adverbs rather than wordy prepositional phrases.

- (poor form): (The women, carrying baskets of fruit on their heads, walked in a very graceful manner.)



**GOOD FORM:** The women, carrying baskets of fruit on their heads, walked very *gracefully*.

**REMINDERS:**

When describing related ideas, always use parallel structure. Review "Parallel Structure" in this section.

Avoid dangling participles and misplaced phrases. Review "Using Participles" in this section.

Be sure that the verb agrees with the subject and that the pronoun agrees with the antecedent. Review "Subject and Verb Agreement" and "Pronoun and Antecedent Agreement."

Be sure to use correct punctuation. Analyze the punctuation of the sentences in "Using Conjunctions" and "Using Participles."

Avoid errors in word usage. See "Misused Words" and "Common Errors in Word Usage" in the Supplement. Look up words in the dictionary to ascertain accuracy and meaning.

Make sure the spelling is correct. Look up words in a dictionary for spelling accuracy.

Avoid incomplete sentences, run-on sentences, etc. Review "Types of Sentences," p. 137 to 140.

Do not change tenses without reason. Review "Establishing a Point of View," p. 144, 145.

Avoid poor grammar usage. Review each section until you can freely and accurately apply the grammatical structures you have studied to your writing.

Avoid a dull style of writing; avoid a disconnected style of writing; avoid sudden changes of ideas. Sentences in paragraphs should not always begin with a subject (see *Sentence Variety*, p. 137). To provide variety and to move smoothly from one sentence to another, you can begin with *adjectives, adverbs, conjunctions, appositives* and *participial phrases*. Compare the poor form below to the good forms. (Of course a number of good forms are possible.) Notice that in the good forms, each subsequent sentence relates to the preceding sentence. In addition to beginning sentences with a variety of forms, the method of repeating a *key word* helps to ensure a continuity of ideas.

(poor form): (A galaxy is comprised of clusters of stars. It may have a billion stars. The Milky Way is the most well-known. The sun and the earth are part of it. People are surprised by that.)

**GOOD FORM:** A galaxy is comprised of clusters of stars. *Each cluster* may contain as many as a billion stars. *Of all the galaxies*, the Milky Way is probably the best known. *As a matter of fact*, the sun and the earth are part of the *Milky Way*. *When* people learn of this fact, they are often surprised.

**GOOD FORM:** Comprised of clusters of stars, a galaxy may contain a billion stars in a cluster. *Undoubtedly*, the most well-known *galaxy* is the Milky Way. *Surprising* to many people is the fact that the sun and the earth are part of the *Milky Way*.



## LITERARY VARIATION IN SENTENCE ORDER

In literary styles of writing, variation can be achieved in many ways. One way is to reverse the sentence order. Compare:

The child sat in the corner.  
In the corner sat the child.

Another way to vary a sentence is to start it with a prepositional phrase of "place."

Across the street from the college is a new museum.  
*Also:* Across the street from the college, there is a new museum.  
Out of nowhere, came a policeman.  
*Also:* Out of nowhere, there came a policeman.  
In the small box was a beautiful carved stone.  
*Also:* In the small box there was a beautiful carved stone.

For special emphasis, a sentence or clause may begin with a negative adverb. Similar to a question form, auxiliaries are used or the subject and verb are reversed. Compare the first two sentences below.

Does he write to her?  
*Never does he write to her!*

*No sooner* had he left than she arrived.  
*Not only* is he a biologist, but he is also a chemist.  
Emile has returned; however, *not before* his employer contacts him, will he resume his position.  
The crowd often cheers but *never before* has the crowd cheered as loudly.  
*Hardly ever* is the air in industrial cities truly pure.  
*Nowhere* has it been said that life always goes smoothly.  
*By no means* has he given up his plan to practice medicine.  
*Rarely*, as a boy, did the inventor have any leisure time.  
*Only* after a great deal of practice can one improve one's performance.  
*Scarcely* had he finished when the monitor declared that the time was up.  
*Seldom* does it rain here in the summer.

The *if* that starts a sentence with a pretend-conditional clause can be omitted. Compare the first four sentences and note the changes in structure.

If he could speak English, he would get a better job.  
Could he speak English, he would get a better job.

If I had known about such a course, I might have taken it.  
Had I known about such a course, I might have taken it.

Had she been home, she could have received the call.  
Were I he, I would take a vacation to get some rest.  
Were the house completed, they could move in.  
Had she kept her receipts, she could have deducted the expense from her income tax.



Endings and clauses are sometimes varied for sentence variety. Compare the following pairs of sentences.

The captain was promoted and so was the lieutenant.  
The captain was promoted, as was the lieutenant.

The classrooms have been painted and so have the halls.  
The classrooms have been painted, as have the halls.

When he returned to his office, the rug hadn't been cleaned yet, and the drapes hadn't been hung yet.  
When he returned to his office, the rug hadn't been cleaned yet, nor had the drapes been hung.

Avoid the following kinds of errors:

(wrong): (On her bedroom wall, a picture of a movie star is.)

RIGHT: On her bedroom wall *is* a picture of a movie star.

RIGHT: On her bedroom wall, *there is* a picture of a movie star.

(wrong): (Scarcely he had time to prepare for the trip.)

RIGHT: Scarcely *did he have* time to prepare for the trip.

(wrong): (Had I been there, I would help her.)

RIGHT: Had I been there, I *would have helped* her.

(wrong): (Our friends were eager to see the show, as we were.)

RIGHT: Our friends were eager to see the show, *as were we*.

(wrong): (Still in shock, the poor man couldn't move nor couldn't speak.)

RIGHT: Still in shock, the poor man couldn't move nor *could he speak*.

### EXERCISE VIII. 12.

Each sentence below has elements of poor form. On a separate piece of paper, rewrite the sentences, using good form.

1. The senator from the state of Iowa he has announced plans to run for office again in the next election.
2. Doctor Park told us that more than symphony music, he enjoyed the ballet.
3. The machine may not, despite efforts to correct it, never be without defects.
4. Not only the streets were full of holes, but the street lights didn't work.
5. Some prints were not available, others were shown without frames.
6. Having carefully followed the procedure, it was disappointing to Victor when the experiment failed.
7. We noticed a woman sitting at the typewriter about twenty years old.
8. John has to go to an interview for a job tomorrow so he is feeling very nervous because he's worried about all of the questions that he will have to answer when he is at the interview.
9. Yesterday a telegram was received by Mr. Naro while he was teaching.
10. Everyone enjoys the beauty of the national parks. There was a great variety of flora and fauna which park guests could learn about by going on guided walks with the rangers.



11. Activities will be planned for young adults and adults who are mature.
12. When the rate for loans was lowered, an improved economy is expected.
13. Melvin spent the evening reading, listening to a record he had just bought, and he reviewed the notes of his speech.
14. Gaston invited the woman to dance with him who was wearing a white dress.
15. Finally someone provided a logical solution to the problem that made sense.
16. Unable to find his way home, the North Star helped to guide him.
17. It was real great to see all of my friends again.
18. When he learned of his dog's death, he grew depressed and unhappy.
19. After assisting in the administration of training programs, Mrs. DiCarlo appointed as chief of staff.
20. Limericks used to be popular but rarely they are written anymore.
21. Before Luba signed her name, studied the petition carefully.
22. However there are laws to protect consumers, there is a lack of enforcement.

### EXERCISE VIII. 13.

Rewrite the sentences in the following paragraphs using a variety of forms to achieve a smooth related flow of ideas.

1. It hadn't rained in a long time. Experts examined the water levels. They said they were low. They said people should use less water. A serious situation might develop.
2. Columbus wanted to find a new route to India. He took three ships with him. He left Spain in 1492. The sailors became frightened. They didn't see any other ships. They wanted to turn back.
3. Joe can't get a job. He was released from jail recently. He is suing the city. His jail record can be seen by perspective employers. Joe thinks that's wrong. His jail record should be sealed.
4. The Namib Desert in Africa has a number of unusual plants and animals. The desert looks lifeless. It rarely rains. Scientists like to study the plants and animals. The fog occasionally rolls in from the ocean. They say it must provide some moisture.



# EPILOGUE

After studying the material in this book, including the material in the Supplement, the student should be prepared for the comprehensive tests on the following pages. The tests have been designed to measure the student's knowledge of grammar and sentence forms. The questions represent the broad variation of those typically asked on actual TOEFL tests.

The pretest should be taken again followed by Test 1, Test 2, Test 3, and Test 4.

Answers to each test should be carefully checked. The student is advised to review those structures of which he or she is unsure.

## TEST 1

### Structure and Written Expression (Time—25–35 minutes)

Directions: In sentences 1–15 select the word or phrase that best completes the sentence and, with your pencil, fill in the circle marked A, B, C, or D, as in the example below.

Peter's jacket cost \_\_\_\_\_ Jack's.

- (A) twice more than
- (B) two times more as
- (C) twice as much as
- (D) twice more as

The correct answer above is (C).

1. The word "dexterous" is similar in meaning \_\_\_\_\_ "deft." (A) (B) (C) (D)
- (A) with
  - (B) like
  - (C) to
  - (D) as
2. Asked to make a list of jobs for which he felt qualified, the applicant \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)
- (A) only included those in which he had had experience
  - (B) included only them in which he had had experience
  - (C) included only ones he had had experience in
  - (D) included only those he had had experience in



3. Originally, each suburb surrounding the city wanted control of its own educational system \_\_\_\_\_ . (A B C D)  
(A) besides that, it wanted control of its own zoning laws  
(B) and its own zoning laws  
(C) and to have jurisdiction over its own zoning laws  
(D) as well as controlling its own zoning laws
4. Ether and alcohol \_\_\_\_\_ in chemistry laboratories. (A B C D)  
(A) frequently are used solvents  
(B) are used frequently solvents  
(C) are frequently used solvents  
(D) are frequent used as solvents
5. The council members have recommended that \_\_\_\_\_ . (A B C D)  
(A) the district change its boundaries  
(B) the district to change its boundaries  
(C) to change the district its boundaries  
(D) the district changed its boundaries
6. After having drafted and signed the Declaration of Independence, Thomas Jefferson, a Virginia landowner who later became president of the United States, \_\_\_\_\_ . (A B C D)  
(A) now one of the most powerful countries in the world  
(B) in 1801  
(C) as he well deserved  
(D) departed from Philadelphia
7. \_\_\_\_\_ in a recent science competition, three individuals were awarded scholarships totaling \$21,000. (A B C D)  
(A) Judged the best  
(B) They were judged the best  
(C) Judging the best  
(D) Having judged the best
8. By the time congressional meetings resume, most members of Congress \_\_\_\_\_ . (A B C D)  
(A) will have a good rest  
(B) who will have had a good rest  
(C) will have had a good rest  
(D) they will have had a good rest
9. Pineapples are not commercially produced in North America, \_\_\_\_\_ . (A B C D)  
(A) and coconuts aren't neither  
(B) and neither are coconuts  
(C) and not coconuts either  
(D) and either aren't coconuts
10. Using the sun's rays to conserve energy \_\_\_\_\_ . (A B C D)  
(A) it makes sense to most people  
(B) makes sense to most people  
(C) to most people it makes sense  
(D) make sense for most people



11. Statistics show that after the speed limit had been reduced, \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 (A) less accidents took place (A B C D)  
 (B) not so many accidents were happening  
 (C) the fewer there were accidents  
 (D) fewer accidents took place
12. One of the officials in the foreign country announced that the goals of \_\_\_\_\_ had been reached. (A B C D)  
 (A) five-years plan  
 (B) the five-year plan  
 (C) the five-years plan  
 (D) five-year plan
13. The young chick, separated from its mother after hatching, followed the family dog around as if the dog \_\_\_\_\_ . (A B C D)  
 (A) is its mother  
 (B) was its mother  
 (C) were its mother  
 (D) has been its mother
14. The longer the sun shines, \_\_\_\_\_ . (A B C D)  
 (A) the earth is warmer  
 (B) it makes the earth more warm  
 (C) the more warmly is the earth  
 (D) the warmer the earth is
15. \_\_\_\_\_ to provide work for young jobless males, the Civilian Conservation Corps relieved the high rate of unemployment. (A B C D)  
 (A) Establishing in the 1930's  
 (B) Established in the 1930's  
 (C) In the 1930's established  
 (D) Being establish in the 1930's

Directions: In questions 16–40 select the underlined word or phrase that is *not* acceptable in standard written English and fill in the circle marked A, B, C, or D, as in the example below.

Keeping clean is surely one of the most important rule of good hygiene.  
 A B C D

The correct answer above is (D). (A B C D)

16. Despite the fact that there was very little rain, the vegetables appeared healthy and marketable.  
 A B C D

17. Thunderstorms may occur when heated air full of water vapor rises, cools, and forming thick dark clouds.  
 A B C D



18. The element carbon is widely found in nature in many forms including both diamonds as well as coal.  
 A B C  
 D (A) (B) (C) (D)
19. In a corporation whose stock is private owned, the board of directors is elected by the stockholders.  
 A B C  
 D (A) (B) (C) (D)
20. Computers and other office equipment, which are being used more and more by businesses, either can be purchased or leased.  
 A B C  
 D (A) (B) (C) (D)
21. in order so that one can develop good merchandising skills, one needs to have experience in buying and selling.  
 A B C  
 D (A) (B) (C) (D)
22. The reason that so many homemakers buy kitchen appliances is that they are wanting to do their tasks in a shorter length of time.  
 A B  
 C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
23. According to newspaper advertisements, there appears to be a great need today for economic and science teachers.  
 A B C  
 D (A) (B) (C) (D)
24. The host suggested that, although it is getting late, everyone remain for another cup of coffee.  
 A B C D  
 (A) (B) (C) (D)
25. By the time jet aircraft could fly at a speed faster than sound, train transportation in the United States was declining over several decades.  
 A B  
 C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
26. While traveling through Japan a few years ago, Professor Cummins noticed that a great many Japanese students are practicing their English with visiting Americans.  
 A B  
 C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
27. Mrs. Block is one of the women who, I believe, is running for office in this district.  
 A B C  
 D (A) (B) (C) (D)



28. If the catcher wouldn't have <sup>A</sup> dropped the ball, the game would probably <sup>B</sup> have ended with a victory for the New York Yankees. <sup>(A) (B) (C) (D)</sup>  
<sub>C D</sub>
29. Realistic, <sup>A</sup> there seems to be no way <sup>B</sup> of settling the issue of water rights for fishermen to the satisfaction <sup>C</sup> of all. <sup>(A) (B) (C) (D)</sup>  
<sub>D</sub>
30. For a time, <sup>A</sup> the planet Mars was thought <sup>B</sup> to have some sort of <sup>C</sup> advanced form of life on its surface but now it appears like <sup>D</sup> the theory has been put aside. <sup>(A) (B) (C) (D)</sup>
31. The fact that there have been only few <sup>A</sup> people attending <sup>B</sup> the meetings has not discouraged the organizers. <sup>(A) (B) (C) (D)</sup>  
<sub>C D</sub>
32. Us <sup>A</sup> members of the community living <sup>B</sup> on the west side of the river have organized a community watch program for the purpose of <sup>C</sup> combatting the rising <sup>D</sup> crime rate. <sup>(A) (B) (C) (D)</sup>
33. The question of whether or not <sup>A</sup> one can truly <sup>B</sup> appreciate the works of <sup>C</sup> others without he himself having done such work often <sup>D</sup> discussed. <sup>(A) (B) (C) (D)</sup>
34. In *The Scarlet Letter* by Nathaniel Hawthorne, Hester Prynne refused, <sup>A</sup> despite the exhortations of the town <sup>B</sup> officials, naming <sup>C</sup> the father of her child. <sup>(A) (B) (C) (D)</sup>  
<sub>D</sub>
35. In a television series named after <sup>A</sup> the book *The Ascent of Man*, Bronowski described many aspects of <sup>B</sup> culture and science from <sup>C</sup> prehistoric times to present. <sup>(A) (B) (C) (D)</sup>  
<sub>D</sub>
36. There were <sup>A</sup> no sign of wild animals when Robinson Crusoe, who alone <sup>B</sup> was alive <sup>C</sup> after the ship had sunk, had reached <sup>D</sup> the island. <sup>(A) (B) (C) (D)</sup>
37. The only <sup>A</sup> insects that make a food <sup>B</sup> that people enjoy eating <sup>C</sup> are bees, which produce honey in its <sup>D</sup> hives. <sup>(A) (B) (C) (D)</sup>







4. Before the detonation of an atomic bomb, never \_\_\_\_\_ . (A) B C D  
 (A) an explosion of such power had taken place  
 (B) had an explosion of such power taken place  
 (C) had been such an explosion of power  
 (D) there had been an explosion of such power
5. Many people don't realize that Lake Superior, \_\_\_\_\_ , is in both the United States and Canada. (A) B C D  
 (A) which it is the largest fresh water lake in the world  
 (B) in the world of which it is the largest fresh water lake  
 (C) which the largest fresh water lake in the world  
 (D) which is the largest fresh water lake in the world
6. The first clock \_\_\_\_\_ was invented in the mid-fourteenth century. (A) B C D  
 (A) to be historically recorded  
 (B) to record historically  
 (C) that recorded historically  
 (D) to historically be recorded
7. Before returning to the United States, \_\_\_\_\_ . (A) B C D  
 (A) an agreement from the two parties the special envoy obtained  
 (B) an agreement by the special envoy was obtained from the two parties  
 (C) the special envoy from the two parties obtained an agreement  
 (D) the special envoy obtained an agreement from the two parties
8. In spite of having been one of the world's greatest golfers, Bobby Jones, \_\_\_\_\_ , never became a professional. (A) B C D  
 (A) chose to remain an amateur  
 (B) choosing to remain an amateur  
 (C) he remained an amateur  
 (D) chosen to remain an amateur
9. Many of us wonder \_\_\_\_\_ will lead to the creation of colonies in space. (A) B C D  
 (A) that the current space activities  
 (B) if the current space activities  
 (C) if the current space activities going on these days  
 (D) about the current space activities
10. The study of aging has become important because the average age of the population \_\_\_\_\_. (A) B C D  
 (A) is increasing  
 (B) increases  
 (C) has increasing  
 (D) was increasing
11. There hasn't been any rain \_\_\_\_\_. (A) B C D  
 (A) since two months  
 (B) in the past two months  
 (C) for two months ago  
 (D) since it has rained two months ago



12. In spite of the airline strikes and other inconveniences, people, according to statistics, \_\_\_\_\_ . (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 (A) enjoy anyway to travel  
 (B) are enjoying to travel  
 (C) find traveling an enjoyable activity to do  
 (D) enjoy traveling
13. Although some snakes serve a useful purpose to mankind, the tendency is to be \_\_\_\_\_ fearful of all snakes. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 (A) somewhat  
 (B) real  
 (C) kind of  
 (D) awful
14. The police questioned the suspects \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 (A) one by one  
 (B) one at the time  
 (C) one and the next  
 (D) by single ones
15. Socrates, the great Greek philosopher, was ordered to \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 (A) give to himself a poison called hemlock  
 (B) give a poison to himself, it was called hemlock  
 (C) give himself a poison called hemlock  
 (D) poison, with a drink called hemlock, himself

Directions: In questions 16–40 select the underlined word or phrase that is *not* acceptable in standard written English and fill in the circle marked A, B, C, or D, as in the example below.

Keeping clean is surely one of the most important rule of good hygiene.

A B C D

The correct answer above is (D).

(A) (B) (C) (D)

16. Neither George Washington or Abraham Lincoln had ever seen an airplane fly during his lifetime. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A B C D

17. The idea which the world may be destroyed by nuclear weapons has raised questions about the justification of their development and use. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A B C D

18. Economists have warned that a lengthy recovery period may be the result of allowing unemployment to raise too much. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 A B C D



19. If certain drugs were taken together, they can cause a person to become extremely ill.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
20. Joe Louis, born in Alabama, was the world's heavyweight boxing champion in 1937 to 1949.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
21. The Dow Jones Average indicates the daily average value of stock shares that are purchase and sold through stock exchanges.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
22. One group was satisfied with the explanation whereas the other group wanted to explore the subject farther.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
23. The actress will soon in November begin rehearsing for the opening of a Broadway show.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
24. The J. Paul Getty museum was so heavy endowed that it has virtually millions of dollars to spend annually on acquisitions.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
25. Since 1782, the bald eagle, which signifies power and courage, is the national emblem of the United States.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
26. Sheep are among the most important animals that has been domesticated because they provide food and clothing; moreover, they are used in making other products such as soap and glue.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
27. To ride in a Venetian gondola and to see the beautiful art of Florence are but two attractions that draw a great amount of tourists to Italy yearly.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
28. Not being able to speak the language of the country which we were visiting, we naturally had difficulty to make ourselves understood.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)



29. Contradicted the testimony that he had given earlier, the witness appeared to be confused and he subsequently asked to be dismissed. (A) (B) (C) (D)
30. The shoe buyer said that since she couldn't get away at this time, one of the experienced clerks were going to be sent to Europe to do some comparative shopping. (A) (B) (C) (D)
31. When changes in society took place, good qualities of the past, those that are worth keeping, sometimes vanish, unfortunately, along with bad qualities. (A) (B) (C) (D)
32. Perhaps a little known fact about Mark Twain, which real name was Samuel Clemens, was that at one time, hoping to make a fortune, he prospected for gold. (A) (B) (C) (D)
33. Although primary a vegetarian, the chimpanzee, a four- or five-foot tall member of the ape family, likes eating meat occasionally. (A) (B) (C) (D)
34. The farmer realized that he'd better, if he didn't want to have a total loss, to harvest his crop earlier than usual. (A) (B) (C) (D)
35. The guard on duty reported the police that he had heard a strange crying noise which seemed to be coming from just outside the basement. (A) (B) (C) (D)
36. Although the designer had all kinds of fabric samples, but she couldn't make up her mind which one to select. (A) (B) (C) (D)
37. The baby sitter told the children that after they had chose the story they wanted, she would read it to them. (A) (B) (C) (D)
38. One has only to see the architecture of several generations ago to realize that people have grown more taller over the years. (A) (B) (C) (D)



39. After the third such incident, the police admonished the young mother not to leave her child walk freely on the streets because something might happen to him. (A) (B) (C) (D)
40. It is far better for one to drink milk, where one gets healthful nutrients, than to drink coffee, which contains no nutrients at all. (A) (B) (C) (D)

## TEST 3

Structure and Written Expression  
Time—25 minutes

Directions: In sentences 1–15 select the word or phrase that best completes the sentence and, with your pencil, fill in the circle marked A, B, C, or D, as in the example below.

Peter's jacket cost \_\_\_\_\_ Jack's. (A) (B) (C) (D)

- (A) twice more than  
(B) two times more as  
(C) twice as much as  
(D) twice more as

The correct answer above is (C).

1. In the War of 1812, the British living in Canada \_\_\_\_\_ . (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 (A) helped the Indians for fight the Americans  
 (B) helped the Indians fight the Americans  
 (C) helped the Indians for fighting Americans  
 (D) helped the Indians to fighting the Americans
2. The drama critic judged \_\_\_\_\_ . (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 (A) the third episode in the series to be the best  
 (B) the episode three in the series to be the best  
 (C) third episode in the series is the best  
 (D) the third episode in the series is the best
3. The balance sheet, prepared by the accountants, \_\_\_\_\_ that the company made a profit last month. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 (A) has shown  
 (B) has been shown  
 (C) showing  
 (D) have shown



4. \_\_\_\_\_ both the largest and northernmost state in the United States, Alaska has the smallest population. (A) (B) (C) (D)
- (A) Despite it is  
(B) In spite being  
(C) In spite of to be  
(D) Despite being
5. Astigmatism \_\_\_\_\_ caused by a flat spot on the eyeball. (A) (B) (C) (D)
- (A) a type of visual impairment  
(B) which is a type of visual impairment  
(C) it's a type of visual impairment  
(D) is a type of visual impairment
6. Mrs. Elvsted, a character in Ibsen's play *Hedda Gabler*, \_\_\_\_\_ that her husband, being a sheriff had to travel a lot. (A) (B) (C) (D)
- (A) explained Hedda  
(B) explained to Hedda  
(C) explains to Hedda  
(D) explained for Hedda
7. The atmosphere is denser near the surface of the earth than \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)
- (A) it is farther away  
(B) further away from it  
(C) denser farther away  
(D) is farther away
8. Individuals who drive without automobile insurance \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)
- (A) may, in the event of an accident, have to pay costly damages  
(B) may, if they have a bad accident, have to pay damages that cost a lot  
(C) may have to pay a lot of money from an accident  
(D) must, in the event of an accident, to pay expensive damages
9. The manager of the hotel requested that their guest \_\_\_\_\_ after 11:00 P.M. (A) (B) (C) (D)
- (A) shouldn't play music loud  
(B) not play music loudly  
(C) don't play loud music  
(D) didn't play music loudly
10. The speed of communications today, as opposed to \_\_\_\_\_, has greatly altered the manner in which business today is conducted. (A) (B) (C) (D)
- (A) the one of yesterday  
(B) communications yesterday  
(C) that of yesterday  
(D) communication's speed a long time ago
11. After gaining their independence, \_\_\_\_\_ their names. (A) (B) (C) (D)
- (A) a large number of countries has changed  
(B) a large amount of countries have changed  
(C) a great deal of countries have changed  
(D) a large number of countries have changed



12. When the court was in session, the judge would not permit entrance by \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) no one  
 (B) anyone  
 (C) someones  
 (D) none
13. Paul Revere was a hero in colonial America because if it hadn't been for \_\_\_\_\_, the war at Lexington might have been lost.  
 (A) him having warned the colonists  
 (B) his having warned the colonists  
 (C) him that he warned the colonists  
 (D) he had warned the colonists
14. Agreements between parties that are intended to be legally binding \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) and are called contracts  
 (B) called contracts  
 (C) are called contracts  
 (D) and that are called contracts
15. If silver \_\_\_\_\_ scarcer than gold, it will no doubt have a greater value.  
 (A) became  
 (B) will become  
 (C) becomes  
 (D) had become

Directions: In questions 16–40, select the underlined word or phrase that is *not* acceptable in standard written English and fill in the circle marked A, B, C, or D, as in the example below.

Keeping clean is surely one of the most important rule of good hygiene.

A

B

C

D

The correct answer above is (D).

(A) (B) (C) (D)

16. Because of increasing less grazing land, a number of wild animals have been placed on the endangered species list.

A

B

C

D

(A) (B) (C) (D)

17. Growing steadily, the company recently added eight additional computer operators to its work force.

A

B

C

D

(A) (B) (C) (D)

18. Nutritionists exhort people to eat foods with fewer fat content and higher nutri-  
tive content.

A

B

C

D

(A) (B) (C) (D)

19. An important function of the World Health Organization is to improve healthy and living conditions for the sick and the poor of the world.

A

B

C

D

(A) (B) (C) (D)



20. Singing two operas at the Metropolitan Opera House, the popular opera star is  
 A B  
awaiting word on her next performance. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 C D
21. To get a job in most office, you have to be able to type fifty words a minute,  
 A B C  
carry out instructions, and spell well. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 D
22. Most people think the wolf is a ferocious beast because of their reputation  
 A B  
based on stories and movies; actually it is afraid of people. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 C D
23. When John Burroughs died, in 1921, he had written and published twenty  
 A  
nature books and gave the people of America much greater awareness of the  
 B C D  
wonders and joys in nature. (A) (B) (C) (D)
24. The committee is hoping that a concert can be arranged imminently in which  
 A B  
the works of Bach will play. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 C D
25. Floods in the country of Holland have been among the worse of any recorded.  
 A B C D  
 (A) (B) (C) (D)
26. When Cleopatra saw that it was helpless to keep fighting, she killed herself  
 A B C  
by letting an asp bite her. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 D
27. Students studying the paintings of Monet are interesting to learn that  
 A B C  
Monet's impressionistic style of painting grew out of visual difficulties.  
 D (A) (B) (C) (D)
28. Psychologists tell us that it's perfectly natural to feel like to run away from our  
 A B C  
responsibilities once in a while. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 D
29. The executive vice-president wants sometimes not just one, but two secretaries  
 A B  
to attend the meeting and to transcribe the proceedings. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 C D
30. The two teams are playing the championship game next Saturday to see whom,  
 A B C  
the red team or the blue team, will win the pennant. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 D
31. If one is in doubt about the legality of a particular drug, you can contact  
 A B C D  
the Food and Drug Administration. (A) (B) (C) (D)
32. Most job applicants would rather, according to a survey, that potential employ-  
 A  
ers not require them to take a lie-detector test. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 B C D



33. Aspirin, the common name for acetylsalicylic acid, is widely used like a drug for  
alleviating pain.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
34. When only a young boy, Georges Bizet knew to play the piano very well and as  
 he grew older, he wrote operas, the most famous of which is Carmen.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
35. Each of the members present have voted to put off moving the headquarters  
 until a suitable location has been found.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
36. Anyone who counts calories is probably aware of the fact that a large apple has  
 as many calories than a banana.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
37. When asked why he was painting a sunset, the man replied that he was painting  
 a sunset because he wanted.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
38. People who traveled long distances to their jobs, are largely dependent on  
 rapid transportation.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
39. Feeling impatiently for someone to return and give him an answer, the student  
 paced up and down the hall.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
40. By the time educators introduced reforms in education, there has been a  
serious decline in achievement in fundamental subjects.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)

TEST 4

Structure and Written Expression  
 Time—25 minutes

Directions: In sentences 1–15 select the word or phrase that best completes the sentence and, with your pencil, fill in the circle marked A, B, C, or D, as in the example below.

- Peter's jacket cost \_\_\_\_\_ Jack's. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 (A) twice more than  
 (B) two times more as  
 (C) twice as much as  
 (D) twice more as  
 The correct answer above is (C).



1. The salmon spends its adult life in rivers and seas but \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
(A) its eggs are laid in streams  
(B) it lays its eggs in streams  
(C) in streams are laid its eggs  
(D) laid in streams are its eggs
2. Henry Ford's plan was to manufacture cheaper cars \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
(A) in large quantity, therefore more people would buy them  
(B) in large quantity in order so more people would buy them  
(C) in large quantity so that more people would buy them  
(D) in large quantity so more people will buy them
3. Before arranging a schedule for the conference next week, \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
(A) an agenda will be proposed by the chairman  
(B) the chairman going to propose an agenda  
(C) the chairman will an agenda prepare  
(D) the chairman will have an agenda prepared
4. A concert \_\_\_\_\_ will be held next week. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
(A) in which the musicians' original compositions will be performed  
(B) which performs the musicians' original compositions  
(C) performing the musicians' original compositions  
(D) that the musicians' original compositions will be performed
5. A reward of five hundred dollars will be given \_\_\_\_\_ can identify the bank robber. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
(A) to whoever  
(B) to whomever  
(C) whomever  
(D) whoever person
6. A fine writer, an excellent storyteller, and \_\_\_\_\_, the author, however, lived a tempestuous and dissolute life. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
(A) being a charming person  
(B) very charming  
(C) a charming person  
(D) charming everyone
7. It's the census taker's job \_\_\_\_\_ the number of people living in a country. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
(A) counting  
(B) to count  
(C) for count  
(D) he must count
8. On television last night the newscaster announced that the leader \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
(A) is arriving on Saturday  
(B) will arrive on Saturday  
(C) would be arrive on Saturday  
(D) would be arriving on Saturday



9. One of the tallest buildings in the United States is \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 (A) the 1,472 feet Empire State Building  
 (B) the Empire State Building which is 1,472 foot high  
 (C) the 1,472 foot Empire State Building  
 (D) the Empire State Building being 1,472 feet tall
10. The United Auto Workers agreed, after much discussion, \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 (A) considering the postponement of a scheduled increase in salary  
 (B) to consider postponing a scheduled salary increase  
 (C) considered putting off a scheduled salary increase  
 (D) considering postponing a scheduled increase in compensation
11. Before anyone could photograph the strange-looking bird, \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 (A) it was flying away  
 (B) it has flown away  
 (C) it flew away  
 (D) it had been flying away
12. \_\_\_\_\_, follow the directions on the bottle carefully. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 (A) When taken drugs  
 (B) When one takes drugs  
 (C) When, in taking drugs,  
 (D) When taking drugs
13. When their nest was disturbed, the bees \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 (A) got real mad  
 (B) became too angry  
 (C) became very angry  
 (D) got darned angry
14. The practice of dining late \_\_\_\_\_ did not start in the United States. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 (A) in the evening  
 (B) at the evening  
 (C) at evening  
 (D) during evening
15. After 1800, Philadelphia \_\_\_\_\_. (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 (A) was no longer the capital anymore  
 (B) wasn't the capital yet  
 (C) was not the capital no more  
 (D) was no longer the capital

Directions: In questions 16–40 select the underlined word or phrase that is *not* acceptable in standard written English and fill in the circle marked A, B, C, or D, as in the example below.

Keeping clean is surely one of the most important rule of good hygiene.

A B C D

The correct answer above is (D).

(A) (B) (C) (D)



16. Only about a half a year do the swallows spend time in the surrounding area of  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 the San Juan Capistrano Mission.
17. No sooner had the curtain fallen when the audience jumped up from their  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 seats.
18. Bill was able to leave the building quickly when the fire broke out but Mary's  
 A B  
 and Betty's room was on the fifth floor and it was nowhere near an exit.  
 C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
19. If the students want advice, they see the counselor, he's usually available.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
20. All of the materials used in making the doll house was from discarded scraps.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
21. In the training session, the instructor mentioned that them who were unsure of  
 A B  
what to do could always ask the department head.  
 C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
22. To avert any criticism, the president had the Secretary of State to address per-  
 A B  
 sonally the Congress to acquaint them with the circumstances surrounding the  
 C D (A) (B) (C) (D)  
 incident.
23. By means of a sensitive voice-detecting machine, the detective determined  
 A B  
 that it was indeed her, the woman he had suspected all along.  
 C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
24. Finally realized a life-long ambition, the sculptor, in a ceremony commemorat-  
 A B  
 ing the event, donated a statue, which was ten feet high, to the city of his birth.  
 C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
25. As far as I'm concerned, the Korean cellist has been played more beautifully in  
 A B C  
 last night's concert than I have ever heard him play.  
 D (A) (B) (C) (D)
26. Latin, from which the Romance Languages are derived from, is rarely taught in  
 A B C D  
 American schools today. (A) (B) (C) (D)
27. Ordinarily, Oregon has more enough than rain needed for maintaining vegeta-  
 A B C D  
 tion in that state. (A) (B) (C) (D)
28. Surprisingly, the catalogue sent to us had excellent information, beautiful illus-  
 A B C  
 trations, and it had an interesting cover.  
 D (A) (B) (C) (D)
29. The architect had intended, at the very least, to have the plans  
 A B  
prepare before the loan commitment expired.  
 C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
30. The prospects of the miner to find gold in that particular location was extremely  
 A B C  
poor.  
 D (A) (B) (C) (D)



31. Those pair of silver bookends that the museum had ordered from a European dealer doing business in Africa, became lost en route to this country.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
32. Last month's rainfall was three times more than the average for that period.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
33. Consider the problems that confronted the expedition, the mountain climbers decided not to attempt to reach the summit.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
34. As careful as possible, and with help from the zookeepers, the veterinarian examined the panda to see whether she was pregnant.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
35. In spite of looking exceedingly complicated, the machine numbered sixteen was the cheapest made item in the entire trade fair.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
36. Dr. Jones, who had been in practice in the town of Williamson for thirty odd years, never objected for his patients' calling at night.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
37. In spite of Nell's original intention to buy the dress, she changed her mind because of the price was high.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
38. Kate was in the conference room discussing plans with the other committee members when the chairman had called to say he'd be late.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
39. The oldest contestant in the hundred-yard dash surprised us spectators by running faster than everyone in the race.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)
40. During the Industrial Revolution, industry was taken out of the home; people moved to cities where had been built many factories.  
 A B C D (A) (B) (C) (D)



# SUPPLEMENT

## CONTRACTIONS

Notice that the contractions below are used in more than one type of verb structure.

he's; she's; it's *equals* he is; she is; it is

*He's* an excellent student. *He is* an excellent student.

he's; she's; it's *equals* he has; she has; it has

*It's rained* for several days. *It has rained* for several days.

I'd; you'd; he'd; she'd; we'd; you'd; they'd *equals* I had; you had; she had; we had; you had; they had

They said *they'd met* earlier. They said *they had met* earlier.

I'd; you'd; he'd; she'd; we'd; you'd; they'd *equals* I would; you would; she would; we would; you would; they would

*She'd drive* if she had a license. *She would drive* if she had a license.

## IRREGULAR VERBS

The principal parts of commonly used irregular verbs are listed alphabetically below. Practice these verbs by making up sentences. For practical purposes, you may begin your sentences with *sometimes*, *yesterday*, and *several times*.

Example: Sometimes I write to my friend.

Yesterday I wrote to my friend.

Several times I have written to my friend.

Example: Sometimes I catch some fish.

Yesterday I caught some fish.

Several times I have caught some fish.

Present	Past	Past Participle
am, are, is	was, were	been
beat	beat	beat(en)
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
bet	bet	bet



bite	bitten
bleed	bled
blow	blown
break	broken
breed	bred
bring	brought
build	built
burst	burst
buy	bought
catch	caught
choose	chosen
come	come
cost	cost
creep	crept
cut	cut
deal	dealt
dig	dug
do	done
draw	drawn
drink	drunk
drive	driven
eat	eaten
fall	fallen
feed	fed
feel	felt
fight	fought
find	found
fit	fit(ted)
flee	fled
fly	flown
forget	forgot(ten)
forgive	forgiven
freeze	frozen
get	got(ten)
give	given
go	gone
grind	ground
grow	grown
hang (a coat, a picture, etc.)	hung
hang (a person)	hanged
have	had
hear	heard
hide	hidden
hit	hit
hold	held
hurt	hurt
keep	kept
know	known
lay	laid
lead	led
leap	leaped (leapt)
leave	left
lend	lent
let	let
lie	lain
lie (tell an untruth)	lied
lose	lost
make	made
mean	meant
meet	met
pay	paid
put	put
bit	bitten
bled	bled
blew	blown
broke	broken
bred	bred
brought	brought
built	built
burst	burst
bought	bought
caught	caught
chose	chosen
came	come
cost	cost
crept	crept
cut	cut
dealt	dealt
dug	dug
did	done
drew	drawn
drank	drunk
drove	driven
ate	eaten
fell	fallen
fed	fed
felt	felt
fought	fought
found	found
fit(ted)	fit(ted)
fled	fled
flew	flown
forgot	forgot(ten)
forgave	forgiven
froze	frozen
got	got(ten)
gave	given
went	gone
ground	ground
grew	grown
hung	hung
hanged	hanged
had	had
heard	heard
hid	hidden
hit	hit
held	held
hurt	hurt
kept	kept
knew	known
laid	laid
led	led
leaped (leapt)	leaped (leapt)
left	left
lent	lent
let	let
lay	lain
lied	lied
lost	lost
made	made
meant	meant
met	met
paid	paid
put	put



quit	quit	quit
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
seek	sought	sought
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
shake	shook	shaken
shine (shoes, etc.)	shined	shined
shine (the sun)	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
slide	slid	slid
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
spin	spun	spun
split	split	split
spread	spread	spread
spring	sprang	sprung
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
strike	struck	struck
swear	swore	sworn
sweep	swept	swept
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
think	thought	thought
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
weave	wove	woven
wed	wed	wed
win	won	won

### IDIOMS, TWO-WORD VERBS, AND EXPRESSIONS

Idioms, two-word verbs, and expressions constitute a large part of both spoken and written English, so it is necessary to understand them. Two-word verbs (verb plus preposition) that may not be separated, are marked N.S.

About to, on the verge . . . almost ready to do something  
of He was about to leave when the telephone rang.



Above all ...	of the greatest importance We were told to drive carefully but, above all, not to exceed the speed limit.
All of a sudden ...	suddenly All of a sudden he left the room.
As a matter of fact; ... in fact	in truth She is very intelligent; as a matter of fact, she has written three textbooks.
As long as ...	since, because, in that As long as you are here, why not stay for dinner?
As usual ...	occurring most of the time Peter was late for school, as usual.
Ask out ...	invite to go somewhere (a date) Oleg asked Clara out last night.
At hand ...	near, of priority First, resolve the business at hand.
At least ...	in the minimum He didn't pass the test but at least he tried.
At times; ... from time to time	occasionally At times Yousef helps his father.
Be hard on ...	treat someone or something harshly When she failed, she was hard on herself.
Be over ...	be finished, be through What time is the movie over?
Bear in mind; ... keep in mind	remember; not forget You must bear in mind that you have only one hour to complete the test.
Blow up ...	become very angry When he saw the broken window, he blew up!
Blow up ...	fill with air He blew up the balloon for the small child.
Break down ...	cease to function His car broke down and it had to be towed to a garage.
Break out ...	erupt The fire broke out in the factory yesterday.
Bring up ...	raise a child That little girl is well-behaved; her parents have brought her up very well.
Bring up ...	raise (a subject) In our discussion he brought up the subject of holistic medicine.
By heart ...	(learn) by memorizing He learned to play the piece by heart.
By the way ...	incidentally By the way, have you sold your car yet?
Call back ...	return a telephone call She said that she would call us back later.
Call off ...	cancel The game was called off because of rain.
N.S. Call on ...	visit Some friends called on us last night.
Call up ...	telephone Before he left, he called up all his friends.



Calm down ...	become quiet, tranquil The policeman tried to calm the mother down.
Can tell by ...	can comprehend, know instinctively I could tell by the expression on his face that he was unhappy.
N.S. Can't stand; ... can't bear; put up with	won't or can't tolerate I can't stand that loud noise. She won't put up with rudeness.
N.S. Not care for ...	dislike, not desire He didn't care for the dress she was wearing. I don't care for any coffee right now.
Catch cold ...	contract a cold Dress warmly so that you don't catch a cold.
N.S. Catch on ...	understand She didn't catch on to the joke that he told her.
N.S. Catch up with ...	reach the same level as others after being behind She hurried to catch up with her friend.
Change one's mind ...	decide against He changed his mind about going and stayed home.
Cheer up ...	raise one's spirits She cheered up her sick friend.
N.S. Come across; ... run across	meet or find something or someone unexpectedly While I was cleaning my closet, I came across some old paintings.
Come to ...	revive, become conscious After she fainted, it took her five minutes to come to.
Come true ...	actually occur Her wish finally came true.
N.S. Count on ...	depend on, rely on One can always count on Fernando to help.
Cut back ...	reduce the amount The doctor told him to cut back on his activities.
Cut down ...	reduce the amount She had to cut down on her calorie intake.
Cut off ...	terminate, suddenly disconnect I will have to call her again; the telephone operator cut us off.
N.S. Cut out ...	quit, stop He finally cut out smoking.
N.S. Deal with ...	control or handle (a matter) Each of us must deal with daily problems.
Do exercise ...	exercise
Do a favor ...	do a small task for someone My friend asked me to do a favor for her.
Do housework; ... do homework; do a job; do research	be involved in work
Do one good ...	be beneficial for one The doctor told him that a vacation would do him good.
Do over ...	repeat, do again If you've made a lot of errors, do the composition over.
Draw up ...	prepare (a contract) After the contract had been drawn up, he signed it.
Drop a line ...	write a letter Drop me a line and let me know how you are.



Drop off . . .	leave (someone or something) at a designated place by car or foot I dropped off the package on the way to school.
Drop out . . .	quit (school) Mike was sorry that he had dropped out of school.
Eat out . . .	eat at a restaurant We usually eat out once a week.
N.S. Feel like . . .	be inclined, have the desire I feel like going swimming.
N.S. Feel sorry for; . . . take pity on	have compassion toward I feel sorry for children who are abused by parents.
Figure out . . .	calculate, understand He couldn't figure out what she meant.
Fill out . . .	complete (a written form) Please fill out the application.
N.S. Find fault with . . .	criticize He always finds fault with her cooking.
N.S. Find out . . .	obtain information She has found out the name of the school.
For good . . .	permanently They plan to live in the United States for good.
Fringe benefit . . .	advantages besides salary One of the fringe benefits of that union is medical coverage.
Get along . . .	progress She's getting along in school just fine.
N.S. Get along with . . .	be friendly with, not fight Are you getting along with your roommate?
Get back . . .	return What time did you get back from the dance?
Get down from . . .	descend She told her son to get down from the tree.
Get in touch with . . .	make contact, communicate with He got in touch with me by telephone.
Get lost . . .	be unable to find the way, lose direction When he drove to Lake Arrowhead, he got lost.
Get one's way . . .	be allowed to do what one wishes That child is spoiled because he always gets his way.
N.S. Get out of . . .	avoid work, or trouble, or problems She got out of washing the dishes by saying that she had a headache.
Get out of . . .	leave an institution; leave a car He got out of jail last week! She got out of the car at the shopping center.
N.S. Get over . . .	recover from grief or illness She finally got over her aunt's death.
Get ready . . .	prepare for an event How long did it take you to get ready for the party?
N.S. Get rid of . . .	discard, throw away He finally got rid of the old newspapers.
N.S. Get through . . .	finish What time did you get through with your work?
Get up . . .	arise, get out of bed They get up at seven o'clock every morning.



Give away ...	give, rather than sell, a possession The children gave away some of their toys.
Give back ...	return (something) He gave the book back when he was through.
N.S. Give in ...	relinquish one's position or "stand" to another person I wanted to go to the mountains but my husband wanted to go to the beach, so I gave in.
Give someone a ring ...	telephone someone I'll give you a ring next week.
Give up ...	surrender They gave up their idea of buying a house because it was too expensive.
Go around ...	be sufficient We had enough food to go around.
Go away ...	leave for a time He went away last Saturday and he won't be back until next week.
Go to bed ...	retire She goes to bed at 11:00 P.M.
Go without saying ...	be so obvious that it does not need explanation It goes without saying that if one spends all of his money, one will not have any in an emergency.
Good for one ...	beneficial for one The change of climate was good for him; he felt much better.
N.S. Grow out of ...	no longer fit; (reference is to children); outgrow. The child grew out of his clothing, so his parents had to buy him more.
Hand in; ...	give over to someone, give
pass in	The teacher asked her students to hand in their papers.
Hang up ...	put the phone in its place; put clothing on a hanger After talking to her friend, Mary hung up the phone. As soon as she entered the house, she hung her coat up.
Hard of hearing ...	partially deaf You will have to speak more loudly because he's hard of hearing.
Hard to imagine; ...	difficult to accept as being true
hard to believe	It was hard to believe that the girl was only twelve; she looked eighteen.
Have in mind ...	be thinking about (a plan) What type of shoes do you have in mind to buy?
Have trouble; ...	used in describing circumstances
have difficulty; have a problem; have fun; have a good time	She had trouble understanding him. They were having a good time when I saw them.
N.S. Hear from ...	have communication Have you heard from your friend?
N.S. Hear of ...	be familiar with Have you ever heard of Paul Muni?
Hold off ...	delay, restrain oneself Since it was still early, he held off going.
Hold still ...	remain motionless The photographer told them to hold still while he took their picture.
How come ...	why? How come you are late?



N.S. In charge of ...	responsible for Marita is in charge of decorations for the dance next Friday.
It's time ...	to be timely for a particular action or decision It's time you decided what career to choose.
In the meanwhile; ... in the meantime	refers to an action during the time of another action, such as <i>while</i> He listened to a nightly radio drama; in the meantime he heard the news.
In the red ...	in debt For the first two years, the business was in the red.
In the way ...	being an obstacle Every time he tries to take his sister's pictures, his little brother gets in the way.
Inside out ...	in reversed position She didn't notice that her sweater was inside out.
It doesn't matter ...	it is of no consequence; "it's okay" It doesn't matter whether you hand in your paper tomorrow or the next day.
It takes time; ...	refers to that which is required
it takes courage, etc. ...	It takes time to develop proficiency.
It takes an hour, etc. ...	It takes courage to do what one fears. It takes an hour to get downtown.
N.S. Keep an eye on ...	guard, watch over You had better keep an eye on your purse when you go shopping.
Keep away ...	maintain some distance Keep away from that fire!
N.S. Keep in touch ...	continue communicating, make contact After you return, please keep in touch with us.
Keep off ...	not walk on a particular surface That sign says to keep off the grass.
Keep out ...	not enter They were told to keep out of the storage room.
Keep on, keep up, ... keep going	continue You are doing good work. Keep it up! He kept playing the radio while his roommate tried to study.
Keep one company ...	be a companion to someone She doesn't like to eat alone so her friend sometimes keeps her company.
Keep someone waiting ...	delay someone His girlfriend kept him waiting for a whole hour.
N.S. Keep track of ...	keep a record of You should keep track of your expenses.
Lay off ...	dismiss from a job During the depression, many workers were laid off.
Leave out ...	omit, delete Answer all the questions; don't leave anything out.
Let down ...	disappointed When he called off the date, Mary felt very let down.
Let go of ...	release, set free The mountain climber was told not to let go of the rope. After questioning the boys, the police let them go.



Let (someone) know ...	inform (someone) I called him to let him know that I would be late.
Let up ...	ease, be less strong After she had taken the medicine, the pain let up.
Like nothing better ...	prefer one thing to all other things My friend likes nothing better than to listen to classical music.
Little by little ...	gradually His health is improving little by little.
N.S. Look around ...	examine one's surroundings While he was waiting for her, he looked around.
N.S. Look down on ...	show disrespect to People are equal; one shouldn't look down on others.
Look forward to ...	anticipate with pleasure I look forward to seeing you again.
N.S. Look into ...	investigate He promised to look into the matter as soon as possible.
N.S. Look like; ... sound like; smell like; feel like; taste like	resemble She looks like her mother.
N.S. Look out; ... watch out Look over ...	be careful Here comes a car. Look out! Watch out! examine, study Before you sign a contract, look it over carefully.
Look up ...	find information in a book If you don't know the meaning of a word, look it up.
Lose one's balance ...	lose equilibrium After drinking so much beer, he lost his balance.
Made by hand ...	not manufactured The lace on her collar was made by hand.
Make a bed ...	also: make peace; make friends; make a mistake; make a wish; make an effort; make a loan; make a deposit; make a decision; make an announcement; make arrangements; make a deal; make progress
Make a face ...	distort one's features The child did not like the food and she made a face.
Make a living; ... earn a living Make believe ...	earn money to live on She made a living by selling weavings. pretend The child made believe that she was a bird.
Make ends meet ...	be able to provide necessities of life In a depression, it is difficult for some people to make ends meet.
N.S. Make fun of ...	joke about (something or someone) He made fun of her new hat.
Make (meals) ...	prepare (meals) Sydney used to make breakfasts on Sunday mornings.
Make sure ...	confirm, be certain Make sure that you lock the door of your car.
Make up ...	invent, create The boy made up a story about a planet.
N.S. Make up ...	reconcile after an argument The couple had quarreled but later they made up.



Make up ...	apply cosmetics The actress made up her face expertly.
Make up one's mind ...	decide She couldn't make up her mind which dress to buy.
Mean a lot ...	be important (to one) He called often because he knew it meant a lot to her.
Mix up ...	confuse The students were mixed up about the instructions.
Must be ...	assume to be true (in present time) She isn't at school; she must be sick.
Must have been ...	assume to be true (in past time) He wasn't home when I called; he must have gone somewhere.
Named after ...	given the same name as The child was named after his grandfather.
Never mind ...	don't concern yourself with Never mind taking me home; I'll take the bus.
No business doing something ...	refers to an action of poor judgment He was an intelligent man; Ron had no business telling him what to do.
No use ...	pointless, of no value Apparently she isn't coming, so there's no use waiting.
None of one's business ...	refers to personal matters that should not be of interest or concern to someone else She didn't think the problem was any of their business. (She thought it was none of their business.)
On a diet ...	required to eat special food for health or for weight loss She doesn't eat desserts; she's on a diet.
On the verge of ...	be about to happen or do The miner was on the verge of discovering gold when the cave collapsed.
Once in a while ...	occasionally Once in a while he does the cooking.
One by one; ... one at a time	singly, individually He interviewed the applicants one by one.
Out of business ...	no longer doing business That store didn't make a profit for its owners so they went out of business.
Out of date ...	old style Some people use slang that is out of date.
Out of gas ...	having no more gas We had better stop at a gas station before we run out of gas.
Out of one's mind ...	insane The noise was so terrible; the poor man thought that he would go out of his mind.
Out of order ...	not functioning properly That telephone doesn't work; it's out of order.
Out of sight ...	not visible I can't see the airplane any longer; it's out of sight.
Out of touch ...	not in contact or communication We haven't spoken or written to each other in a long time; we have been out of touch.



Out of town . . .	in another city or town My husband won't be home until Friday; he's out of town.
Out of work . . .	without employment He's collecting unemployment insurance because he's out of work.
Over and over . . .	repeatedly You may have to do the exercises over and over before you get them correct.
N.S. Pass away . . .	die Her grandfather passed away a year ago.
Pass out . . .	faint, lose consciousness When she got the bad news, she passed out.
Pick out . . .	select, choose Have you picked out your furniture yet?
Put away . . .	put things in their proper place Will you ask the children to put away their toys?
Put off . . .	postpone, delay Tom put off his dental appointment until next month.
Put on . . .	add (weight), add (clothing) She asked him if he had put on weight. He put his coat on and said good-bye.
Put out . . .	extinguish (a fire) The firefighters quickly put out the fire.
Put out . . .	set outside Did you put the bottles out for the milkman?
Put together . . .	assemble Can you put this puzzle together?
Read over . . .	to read from beginning to end; to get information from reading material Before signing, you'd better read it over.
Run away . . .	flee; escape The horse has run away and must be captured.
Run out of . . .	have no more remaining Tricia couldn't bake cookies this morning because she had run out of sugar.
See . . .	understand I saw that it was futile to explain.
N.S. Send for . . .	ask (a specialist) to come in times of need When the pipe began to leak, she sent for a plumber. When the baby got sick, she sent for the doctor.
Show up . . .	appear John hasn't shown up in class for three days.
Shut off . . .	stop the flow of (gas, water, electricity) If you don't pay your bill, the gas company may shut off the gas.
Stand out . . .	to be prominent He was unusually bright and therefore he stood out in the class.
Stay up . . .	not go to bed I have a bad habit of staying up until midnight.
Take a chance . . .	risk Although we didn't have tickets, we took a chance that we would be admitted.
Take advantage of . . .	use the opportunity for The museum movies are free; we should take advantage of them.



Take advantage of . . .	abuse a kindness She takes advantage of her neighbor by borrowing things too often.
N.S. Take after . . .	resemble, look like Who do you take after, your mother or father?
Take . . . (an amount of time)	use a particular amount of time for an action It took her two hours to get ready for the party.
Take apart . . .	disassemble, separate the parts The repairman took the clock apart.
Take care of . . .	watch over, be responsible for She took good care of her children.
Take down . . .	remove from a high place Will you take down that painting?
Take down . . .	write (write down on paper) The teacher asked us to take down some information.
Take hold of . . .	grasp If you are frightened, take hold of my hand.
Take off . . .	remove (clothing) Since it was a warm day, Jan took off his jacket.
Take off . . .	depart (referring to) an airplane The plane took off at exactly 6:15 A.M.
Take one's time . . .	not hurry, not rush It's early; take your time getting ready.
Take out . . .	escort someone somewhere The young man took the girl out to dinner.
N.S. Take over . . .	assume responsibility The teacher asked the student to take over the class.
Take pains . . .	be very careful with, be particular Mrs. Beuhel took great pains with her sewing.
Take part in . . .	participate in Helene didn't want to take part in the demonstration.
Take place . . .	occur, happen The festival will take place on Sunday.
Take responsibility . . .	assume responsibility The children took responsibility for feeding their dog.
Take something for granted . . .	not appreciate, expect continuance Some people take their friends for granted.
Take time off . . .	obtain free time from work She took time off to do some shopping.
Take turns . . .	alternate Pedro and Thomas took turns driving to San Francisco.
Talk over . . .	discuss Before deciding, she talked it over with a friend.
Tear down . . .	demolish The building was torn down to make room for the new museum.
Tell apart . . .	distinguish between or differentiate The twins look so much alike, it's difficult to tell them apart.
These days; today, . . . nowadays	currently; present passage of time Everything is costly these days.
Think over . . .	consider carefully Before we bought the house, we thought it over carefully.
Throw away . . .	discard, get rid of Please throw away all the old newspapers.



N.S. Throw up ...	regurgitate After eating the spoiled food, the dog threw up.
Tired out ...	fatigued, exhausted She was tired out from cleaning windows all day.
Try on ...	put on to test the fit, size, and/or appearance She tried on a beautiful fur coat.
Try out ...	test Before I bought my car, I tried it out.
Turn back ...	return to original place Since the road was in poor condition, they decided to turn back.
Turn down ...	reject, refuse Nina turned down Bob's offer of marriage. She was turned down by the college at which she had applied.
Turn off ...	stop (radio, stove, TV, records, lights) He finally turned off the lights.
Turn on ...	start (radio, stove, television, lights, motor, washing machine, etc.) When the dishes were placed in the dishwasher, she turned it on.
Upside down ...	reverse position, "bottom is up" We noticed that the painting had been hung upside down.
N.S. Wait on ...	serve A waitress named Prudence waited on us.
N.S. Wait up for ...	not go to bed while waiting for someone Miriam always waits up for her children.
Wake up ...	awaken, open one's eyes after sleeping What time do you wake up in the morning?
What is it like? ...	asking for a description
What was he like? ...	What was your childhood like?
What has it been like? (etc.)...	What is it like to be a twin? What did he look like? What has it been like to live in a foreign country?
Why not? ...	Why don't you?; Why shouldn't I? etc. Why not stay for dinner?
Without question ...	for certain, unquestionably Without question he is the best tennis player in the city.
Worn out ...	threadbare from long use; exhausted The old carpet was worn out. By the end of the day, she was worn out.

### COMMON ERRORS IN WORD USAGE

Often words are combined with other words incorrectly. The student of English must be careful to avoid incorrect word combinations.

Listed below are combinations that are *not* correct. Pay special attention to the correct combination of words.

(incorrect):	(reason ... because)	(The reason he's late is because his car broke down.)
CORRECT:	reason ... that	The reason he's late is that his car broke down.
(incorrect):	(different than)	(He is different than the other boys.)



CORRECT:	different from	He is <i>different from</i> the other boys.
(incorrect):	(being as)	(Being as he was a little boy, he became restless during the long speech.)
CORRECT:	being	<i>Being</i> a little boy, he became restless during the long speech.
(incorrect):	(despite of)	(Maureen went swimming <i>despite of</i> her cold.)
CORRECT:	in spite of	Maureen went swimming <i>in spite of</i> her cold.
(incorrect):	(near to)	Maureen went swimming <i>despite</i> her cold. (The nurse put the flowers <i>near to</i> the bed.)
CORRECT:	near	The nurse put the flowers <i>near</i> the bed.
(incorrect):	(off of)	The nurse put the flowers <i>next to</i> the bed. (The boy fell <i>off of</i> the roof.)
CORRECT:	off	The boy fell <i>off</i> the roof.
(incorrect):	(could of)	(He <i>would of</i> come if he had felt better.)
	(might of)	(He <i>must of</i> been ill last night.)
	(must of)	(She <i>should of</i> done her homework yesterday.)
	(should of)	
	(would of)	
CORRECT:	could have	He <i>should have</i> come if he had felt better.
	might have	He <i>must have</i> been busy last night.
	must have	She <i>should have</i> done her homework yesterday.
	should have	
	would have	
(incorrect):	(equally as good)	(Those vegetables are <i>equally as good as</i> the vegetables in the other store.)
CORRECT:	equally good	The vegetables in the two stores are <i>equally good</i> .
(incorrect):	as good as	Those vegetables are <i>as good as</i> the vegetables in the other stores.
	(kind of a)	(I don't know what <i>kind of a</i> material it is.)
	(sort of a)	
	(type of a)	
CORRECT:	kind of	I don't know what <i>kind of</i> material it is.
	sort of	
	type of	
(incorrect):	(at about)	(He arrived at <i>about</i> five o'clock.)
CORRECT:	about	He arrived <i>about</i> five o'clock.
(incorrect):	(because . . . why)	(Because he was out of town is <i>why</i> he was absent.)
CORRECT:	because	He was absent <i>because</i> he was out of town.
(incorrect):	(win him)	(George <i>won him</i> in the chess game.)
CORRECT:	beat him	George <i>beat him</i> in the chess game.
	win	George <i>won</i> the chess game.
(incorrect):	(a half a)	(He ate <i>a half a</i> grapefruit.)
CORRECT:	a half	He ate <i>a half</i> grapefruit.
	half a	He ate <i>half a</i> grapefruit.
(incorrect):	(these kind)	(I like <i>these kind of</i> candy.)
CORRECT:	this kind	I like <i>this kind of</i> candy.
	these kinds	I like <i>these kinds of</i> candies.
(incorrect):	(out loud)	(He read the article <i>out loud</i> this morning.)



CORRECT:	aloud	He read the article <i>aloud</i> this morning.
(incorrect):	(prefer than)	(She prefers rice <del>than</del> potatoes.)
CORRECT:	prefer to	She <i>prefers</i> rice <i>to</i> potatoes.
(incorrect):	(seldom ever)	(He <del>seldom ever</del> plays golf.)
CORRECT:	seldom	He <i>seldom</i> plays golf.
(incorrect):	hardly ever	He <i>hardly ever</i> plays golf.
(incorrect):	(superior than)	(His painting skill is superior <del>than</del> the others.)
CORRECT:	superior to	His painting skill is <i>superior to</i> the others.
(incorrect):	(be sure and)	(He told us to be sure <del>and</del> be there on time.)
	(try and)	(He told us to try <del>and</del> be there on time.)
CORRECT:	be sure to	He told us to <i>be sure to</i> be there on time.
(incorrect):	try to	He told us to <i>try to</i> be there on time.
(incorrect):	(in between)	(He sat <del>in between</del> the two girls.)
CORRECT:	between	He sat <i>between</i> the two girls.
(incorrect):	(in back of)	(The gymnasium is <del>in back of</del> the school.)
CORRECT:	back of	The gymnasium is <i>back of</i> the school.
	behind	The gymnasium is <i>behind</i> the school.
(incorrect):	(outside of)	(They made the dog sleep <del>outside of</del> the house.)
CORRECT:	outside	They made the dog sleep <i>outside</i> the house.
(incorrect):	(kind a)	(It's <del>kind a</del> cold today.)
CORRECT:	somewhat	It's <i>somewhat</i> cold today.
(incorrect):	(feel badly)	(She feels <del>badly</del> that she can't go to the dance.)
CORRECT:	feel bad	She <i>feels bad</i> that she can't go to the dance.
(incorrect):	(both . . . as well as)	(Both Syd <del>as well as</del> Phil are intelligent.)
CORRECT:	both . . . and	<i>Both Syd and</i> Phil are intelligent.
(incorrect):	(most all)	(He answered <del>most all of</del> the questions correctly.)
CORRECT:	almost all	He answered <i>almost all</i> of the questions correctly.
(incorrect):	(leave, meaning "permit")	(The boy sometimes <del>leaves</del> his dog sleep on his bed.)
CORRECT:	(let)	The boy sometimes <i>lets</i> his dog sleep on his bed.
(incorrect):	(many of people)	( <del>Many of people</del> shop here.)
CORRECT:	many of the people	<i>Many of the people</i> shop here.
	many people	<i>Many people</i> shop here.
	many of them	<i>Many of them</i> shop here.

Below is a list of commonly misused words. Be sure to spell and to use each of the following words correctly. Check the meaning of each word (or group of words).

hung—hanged, real—very, desert—dessert, counsel—council—consul, sight—site—cite, to—two—too, weather—whether, some—somewhat, sure—certainly, proceed—precede, alright—all right, most—almost, continually—continuously, like—alike, advice—advise, when—whenever, what—whatever, who—whoever, altogether—all together, like—alike, around—about, beside—besides, besides—next to, already—all ready, between—among, farther—further, quite—quiet, it's—its, who's—whose, you're—your, defined—definition, beauty—beautiful, later—latter, lose—loose, percent—percentage, principle—principal, there—their—they're, accept—except,



maybe—may be, formally—formerly, aggravate—annoy, awfully—very, good—well, former—first, latter—last, healthy—healthful, leave—let, imply—infer, in—into, somewhat—quite, learn—teach, likely—liable, locate—settle—move, respectfully—respectively, terribly—very, way—ways, interesting—interested, conscious—conscience, win—beat, relieve—relief, capital—capitol, corps—corpse, dual—duel, forth—fourth, passed—past, prophesy—prophecy, better—had better, statue—stature—statute, so—so that, so—very, considerable—considerate, suspect—suspicion, too—very, course—coarse, kind of—somewhat, sort of—somewhat, another—other—the other—others, bad—badly, less—lesser, specially—especially, live—alive, negligent—negligible, able—enable

The student is sometimes confused about the following words. The words marked wrong are *not* in the English language.

(wrong): (carefulness)

RIGHT: care

(wrong): (anywheres)

RIGHT: anywhere

(wrong): (suspicioned)

RIGHT: suspected

(wrong): (irregardless)

RIGHT: regardless

(wrong): (somerhes)

RIGHT: somewhere

(wrong): (complected)

RIGHT: complexioned

(wrong): (suppose to)

RIGHT: be supposed to

(wrong): (hisself)

RIGHT: himself

(wrong): (theirselves)

RIGHT: themselves

(wrong): (sometime)

RIGHT: sometimes

some time



# ANSWERS TO TESTS

(The Pretest answers are given with the answers to the other full-length simulated TOEFL tests.)

A single answer to a question is not always the only possible answer. You will notice, therefore, that in a number of instances alternate answers have been provided.

## SECTION I

### Exercise I. 1.

1. doesn't have; takes
2. has; likes
3. is preparing
4. seldom/rarely; is writing
5. must be snowing
6. can hardly; is blowing; is getting

### Exercise I. 3.

1. have been taking/have taken
2. has been offering/has offered
3. has seen
4. hasn't eaten
5. has just received

### Mixed Exercise 1. Part A

(Mixed Exercises include questions pertaining to material from the first page of the book to the page to which the student has progressed. The structure and the reference to the explanation is given after each answer.)

1. C Present perfect
2. D Present tense
3. B Present continuous

### Mixed Exercise 1. Part B

1. have just gone. Present perfect
2. A is being. Present continuous
3. D was. Past tense in the *since* clause with present perfect
4. B look. Subject-verb agree
5. D are seldom. Negative frequency adverbs

### Exercise I. 5.

1. delivered; was entertaining
2. was walking; saw
3. were watching; came over
4. didn't hear; was in the engine room checking.
5. heard; investigated

### Exercise I. 7.

1. had gone
2. had been competing
3. had mixed

7. are; usually plans
8. should be; playing
9. is; thirteen, or thirteen years old, or thirteen years of age; appears
10. doesn't know how; has

6. have been growing/have grown
7. have visited
8. Have you registered
9. have been expressing/have expressed
10. has been; has never forgotten

4. B Modals in present time

5. A Present perfect

6. C Present perfect

7. D Present tense

8. A Present continuous

9. C Modals in present time

10. B Present perfect

6. A is making. Present continuous

7. C negotiating. Modal continuous in present time

8. C is preparing. Present continuous

9. C sometimes isn't. Frequency adverbs with negative contractions

10. C have agreed. Present perfect, completed action

6. was turning; came

7. was demonstrating; tripped; fell

8. could not play; had to work

9. were moving; started

10. was doing; ordered

4. had been

5. had been going on

6. had been cleaning



Exercise I. 8.

1. had been raining
2. hasn't been working
3. lost; stopped
4. had been accruing

Exercise I. 10.

2. I should have done my homework, but ...
3. I must have left my book ...
4. He was going to sing last night, but ...
5. He may have been sleeping
6. I could have gone to the rock concert last week, but ...

Mixed Exercise 2: Part A

1. C Past modals
2. B Past perfect
3. B Past continuous
4. A Present perfect
5. C Past tense

Mixed Exercise 2: Part B

1. B be talking. Present modals
2. B has had. Present perfect
3. C doesn't. Subject-verb agree
4. A would certainly have kept. Past modals
5. D used to. Past tense

Exercise I. 14.

1. will be watching; gets
2. goes; will be working
3. will be preparing

Exercise I. 16.

1. will have redecorated
2. will have replaced
3. will have been

Exercise I. 18.

Completion of sentences should include the following tenses:

1. Present continuous
2. Present perfect
3. Past tense
4. Past continuous
5. Future/future expression
6. Past Modal and Expression of intention
7. Present perfect/present perfect continuous
8. Future continuous
9. Future perfect/future perfect continuous
10. Present tense

Mixed Exercise 3: Part A

1. C Past continuous
2. B Present perfect continuous
3. B Future perfect
4. A Past perfect
5. D Present, time clause with conditional future possible

Mixed Exercise 3: Part B

1. B found. Past with past continuous
2. C would like. *Would* with like for specific occasions
3. B has never forgotten. Present perfect
4. B had already returned. Past perfect
5. A ruled. Past tense
6. A speaks. Present tense in time clause with future clause

SECTION II

Exercise II. 1.

2. The foreign heads of state have just been welcomed by the mayor.
3. Yesterday the mail wasn't delivered until 5.00 P.M.

5. was watching
6. had violated
7. had developed

7. I wasn't going to watch the horror film, but ...
8. She would have returned the books yesterday, but ...
9. He shouldn't have driven fast/He shouldn't have been driving fast ...
10. The child must have been (afraid).

6. A Present modals
7. D Present perfect
8. B Present tense
9. D Past tense
10. C Past perfect continuous

6. B had barely. Negative frequency adverbs
7. A was. Past for deceased
8. A for 3 weeks. *For* and *since*, present perfect
9. C were wearing. Past continuous
10. B had been. Past perfect with reporting verbs

4. drives; will be flying
5. will you be doing; attends
6. won't still be conferring

4. will have been talking
5. will have been discussing
6. have built

11. Past perfect continuous
12. Past perfect modal expressing probability
13. Past perfect
14. Future continuous expression
15. Past perfect modal or past expression expressing intention
16. Present modal expressing possibility
17. Past tense
18. Future continuous/continuous modal/future
19. Present perfect
20. Future/future continuous; present tense

6. C Present continuous
7. C Future perfect continuous
8. B Present continuous
9. A Present continuous
10. D Past expression of intention

7. A for seven months. Present perfect *for* and *since*
8. B should have borrowed. Past modal
9. B live. Subject-verb agree.
10. D could. Negative frequency adverbs

4. The new textbook will be published next May.
5. The noise is being caused by a cement mixer.



6. By dawn tomorrow the forest fire will have been extinguished.
7. The cooperation of students is needed in order to have a successful program.
8. As soon as the ambulance arrived, the wounded man was driven to the hospital.

## Exercise II. 3.

2. is having/is getting; done/cut/set/washed/etc.
3. have; made/remodeled/átered/etc.
4. has just had; stolen
5. will have/hope to have/expect to have; paid (paid off)

## Mixed Exercise 4: Part A

1. B Present perfect
2. C Past passive
3. A Past tense
4. C Future perfect
5. D Causative passive

## Mixed Exercise 4: Part B

1. B likes. Present tense
2. D were being tested. Past continuous passive
3. C will have had. Future perfect
4. D is used to it. *Be used to*
5. A will be performed. Future passive

## SECTION III

## Exercise III. 1.

2. Was the concert attended by the majority of the student body?
3. Has she decided to take a course in shorthand before she applies for a job?

## Exercise III. 2.

2. Who has won this year's debating contest?  
What kind of contest has Katsumi won?
3. Whose cat was found yesterday by Jack, a next-door neighbor?  
Who found Zobi's cat yesterday?

## Exercise III. 4.

1. didn't it
2. has he
3. don't they

## Exercise III. 5.

(Sample answers are given.)

1. He; so do I
2. They; we weren't either

## Mixed Exercise 5: Part A

1. A Past perfect continuous
2. D Causative passive
3. C Past modals
4. B Future perfect
5. D Future passive

## Mixed Exercise 5: Part B

1. B may be. Modal
2. D neither did Lien/Lien didn't either. Tag ending
3. C was able to win. When achieving a goal, use *was able* not *could*.
4. D belonged. Past tense
5. D be cut down. Past passive

## SECTION IV

## Exercise IV. 1.

1. was sleeping
2. had been
3. hadn't crossed
4. would hike

9. The washing machine can't be installed until the tenant moves in.
10. An old building was being torn down as we drove by.

6. have had it/have gotten it dry-cleaned/washed
7. had; corrected/rewritten
8. have/get. repaired/fixed/cleaned

6. A Future continuous
7. B Past tense
8. C Frequency adverbs in present tense
9. D Future passive
10. A Causative passive

6. D has never eaten. Present perfect
7. B should have given. Past perfect modal
8. D prepared. Past tense
9. B preparing. Present continuous
10. A threaten. Active voice

4. Are they going to go for a long walk if they finish their work early?
5. Was the candidate being careful, when he gave his speech, not to offend any political group?

4. Why should Karen have lent her bicycle to George?  
To whom should Karen have lent her bicycle?
5. At which hotel will Mr. and Mrs. Perry be staying?  
How long will Mr. and Mrs. Perry be staying at the Logan Hotel?

4. won't she
5. weren't they

3. She, but he isn't
4. The show; neither will the film
5. We; they did too

6. B Tag endings
7. A Formation of questions
8. C Formation of questions
9. B Past perfect
10. D Tag endings

6. B is meeting. Present continuous
7. A has the annual meeting ... been postponed. Formation of questions
8. B decided. Present perfect
9. C was being loaded. Past passive
10. B is notified. Present time clause with future

5. didn't have; left
6. had been promoted
7. were
8. had been saved



9. were watching (are watching)

Exercise IV. 2.

(Answers in an informal style are added in the parentheses when the statement is assumed to be currently true.)

1. I told them that Betty was an excellent student. (I told them that Betty is an excellent student.)
2. She said that she was going (was going to go) on a business trip next week. (She said that she is going on a business trip next week.)

Exercise IV. 4.

2. is soon, was soon
3. will help, would help
4. would the politician, the politician would
5. divorced, had divorced
6. had to, has to

SECTION V

Exercise V. 1.

1. had remembered, had remembered to
2. hadn't repaired, would be/might be/could be
3. remodel
4. were
5. hadn't been changed
6. would have cooked/might have cooked/could have cooked, had had

Exercise V. 2.

1. was, were
2. would visit, would have visited
3. stops, would stop/stopped
4. returned, return

Mixed Exercise 6: Part A

1. B Past passive
2. C Conditional unreal past
3. D Past continuous
4. A Past form with past reporting verb
5. D Continuous modal in present time expressing probability

Mixed Exercise 6: Part B

1. C found, Past tense
2. B had broken, Past perfect with reporting verb
3. A would like, *Would* in polite form
4. D were, *As if*, unreal present
5. A had better, Modal

SECTION VI

Exercise VI. 1.

(Wherever necessary a "sample object" has been included.)

1. us to come
2. not to move
3. to compete
4. him to use
5. to pass
6. to obtain
7. to be repaired
8. didn't mean to
9. to change
10. to have been chosen
11. Jane to apply

Exercise VI. 2.

1. working
2. being picked up
3. to be; talking
4. not turning on

10. had

3. He wanted to know if you were planning to take a speech course. (He wanted to know if you are planning to take a speech course.)
4. We thought that Paul hadn't eaten breakfast yet.
5. Joe wondered how long she had been married.

7. will she, she will

8. do I like, if I liked, whether I liked/whether or not I liked

9. can't answer, couldn't answer, he's, he was

10. has just awakened, had just awakened

7. were, could get/might get/would get

8. may/might/could

9. received

10. had been made

5. was, were

6. would be, will be

7. weren't discovered, hadn't been discovered

8. was, were

6. C Present continuous

7. D Conditional passive past unreal

8. B Nominative clause with reporting verb

9. D Tag endings

10. A Past perfect

6. C had been, Conditional unreal past

7. C would have to, Past form with past reporting verb

8. A had been built, Past perfect passive

9. A omit *us*, Past reporting verb

10. B would never have, Past perfect modal

12. not to have won

13. to have

14. to set

15. not to touch

16. to give

17. to practice

18. the teacher to give you/to be given

19. to register

20. to speak

21. to make

22. to go

23. to find; to have been taken

5. taking; to get

6. to communicate

7. questioning; using/having used

8. to have been found; hunting



9. not to risk; having had/having; losing
10. being carried
11. their reducing/their having reduced
12. laughing

## Exercise VI. 4.

1. rehearsing
2. not being able
3. going
4. didn't hand in
5. look it over
6. major
7. be
8. to spread

## Mixed Exercise 7: Part A

1. C Perfect infinitive
2. A Tag endings
3. D Past tense with past reporting verb
4. A Possessive with gerund
5. D Infinitive
6. A *Would*, Past tense

## Mixed Exercise 7: Part B

1. C is elected. Present tense in conditional clause with future
2. C to finish. Infinitive
3. B did he tell you. Formation of questions
4. B were to be inspected. Future passive
5. B his working. Gerund with possessive

## SECTION VII

## Exercise VII. 1.

1. the
2. no article
3. the
4. no article
5. no article
6. the; an
7. the

## Exercise VII. 2.

1. three minutes egg. a three-minute egg
2. a third time. the third time
3. University of Colorado. the University of Colorado
4. the raw fish. raw fish
5. a honorable man. an honorable man
6. the page thirty-four. page thirty-four
7. the telephone. a telephone
8. has largest animal. has the largest animal
9. the fish or the chicken. fish or chicken
10. security system. a security system
11. two childs. two children
12. One of hospitals. One of the hospitals
13. the Fred's restaurant. Fred's restaurant
14. the cotton. cotton
15. a house. the house; tree. trees; the glass. a glass

## Exercise VII. 5.

1. to bring
2. laid
3. was raised
4. hung up
5. her boyfriend
6. is used

## Exercise VII. 6.

See Irregular Verbs in the Supplement for Correct Answers.

13. your speaking; writing
14. to purchase
15. to go; (to) work; arranging
16. our visiting; to discuss

9. open; to find
10. his having received; to hear
11. my playing the piano
12. having; breathing; trying; to remain
13. being carried
14. to have been running
15. to watch; surf

7. D Present tense in conditional clause with future possible
8. C Proposal clause
9. B Present perfect passive
10. A Present tense

6. B composing. Present continuous
7. B omit should. Proposal clause
8. D to be. Infinitive
9. D to become. Infinitive
10. C become familiar. Proposal

8. the
9. no article
10. the; the; the
11. a
12. no article; the
13. a; the
14. a

16. one luggage. one piece of luggage
17. typewriter's keys. typewriter keys
18. Pacific Ocean. The Pacific Ocean; west coast. the west coast
19. the lettuce, the apples, the fish. lettuce, apples, and fish
20. the chess. chess
21. Peace-keeping force. The peace-keeping force
22. an information. information
23. city of Venice. the city of Venice
24. only one. the only one; statistic class. the statistics class
25. in the past times. in past times; in the present times. in present times

7. is lying
8. lend
9. came; began
10. took over the responsibility
11. laid



Exercise VII. 7.

1. regularly
2. frightened
3. originally
4. carefully
5. the most interesting
6. as eloquently as
7. a little
8. any other
9. fewer
10. useless
11. the same as

Exercise VII. 8.

1. the greater, the greatest
2. anyone, anyone else
3. most all, almost all; bad damaged, badly damaged
4. quick, quickly
5. as, than
6. good or accurate, well or accurately
7. conclusive decided, conclusively decided
8. high poisonous, highly poisonous; real dangerous, very dangerous
9. yet, anymore

Exercise VII. 9.

1. he/he does
2. ours
3. herself/it
4. he/he had
5. him
6. hers; his; his/hers
7. whose
8. him; me
9. himself

Exercise VII. 10.

1. me, I/I am
2. than yesterday, the one/that yesterday
3. not her, not she
4. where, that
5. him, his
6. which, in which
7. whom, who
8. where, in which
9. them, they
10. Who, Whom (formal)

Exercise VII. 11.

1. at
2. on
3. on
4. of
5. on
6. to
7. at
8. to
9. to
10. on; on

Exercise VII. 12.

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| approve of         | affected by     |
| recover from       | grateful for    |
| subscribe to       | sympathize with |
| authority on       | complain about  |
| enthusiastic about | different from  |

12. beautifully
13. such a crowded a place
14. worse and worse
15. a greater amount of
16. happily
17. suddenly
18. the more strongly
19. fundamentally
20. a very
21. the younger

10. illegal shipped, illegally shipped
11. loudly ringing, loud ringing
12. twice more than, twice as many imported cars this year as
13. original, originally
14. so many, as many; like, as
15. near enough heavy, nearly heavy enough
16. too much, very much
17. much interests, many interests; primary, primarily
18. most all, almost all; sort of, somewhat/rather

10. those
11. that/the one
12. you; him
13. those/the ones
14. those
15. those/whoever
16. which/that
17. in which/where
18. in whose

11. them, those; us, we
12. whomever, whoever
13. themselves, them
14. which, that
15. them, those
16. which, whose
17. about, Omit the second about
18. which, whose
19. This here kind, These kinds
20. whose, for whose

11. with
12. for
13. to
14. for
15. from
16. by
17. with
18. with
19. of
20. of

- |              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| similar to   | take a chance on |
| suitable for | compete with     |
| critical of  | angered by       |
| involved in  | skillful in      |



Exercise VII, 13.

1. has been dedicated to
2. was pleased with
3. are affected by
4. will be committed to
5. have been opposed to

Exercise VII, 14.

1. on, at
2. with, to
3. in the, at
4. for, of
5. by, from
6. at, from
7. in, on
8. with, of
9. with, of
10. for, of
11. for, in
12. to, with
13. about, to
14. for, to
15. about, to
16. to swim, in swimming
17. for, of
18. with, in
19. than, from
20. from, about

Mixed Exercise 8: Part A

1. C Possessive pronoun
2. D Verb word
3. B Adjectives
4. B Gerund with possessive
5. A Prepositions
6. A Verbs
7. D Gerunds
8. D Demonstrative pronouns
9. C Verbs
10. D Adverbs
11. B Articles
12. B Present perfect
13. A Object pronoun

Mixed Exercise 8: Part B

1. A me, Object pronoun
2. B luggage, Nouns
3. B like that of other animals, Demonstrative pronouns
4. B washed, Causative passive
5. B an educated man, Articles
6. C all the other composers, Comparative of indefinite pronouns
7. A who, Relative pronouns
8. B by, Prepositions
9. D pencil, Nouns
10. D very, Adverbs
11. A played/had played, Past perfect
12. A whose, Possessive pronoun
13. C himself, Reflexive pronoun
14. A explained/explained to us, Reporting verb
15. B has lain, Verbs
16. B better, Comparative adjectives
17. A excited, Adjectives
18. A It's, Contractions

6. were disturbed by
7. is composed of
8. was blamed for
9. has been married to
10. were involved in

21. with, to
22. from, of
23. for, like
24. into, with
25. by, with
26. on, with
27. of, for
28. from, for
29. with, to
30. for, with
31. from, by, for, to
32. about, with
33. for, of
34. to produce, from producing
35. about, of
36. in, to
37. for, in
38. of, from
39. against, from
40. in spite, in spite of

14. B Irregular verbs
15. D Articles
16. A Comparative adjectives
17. C Infinitives
18. A Present perfect
19. D Adjectives of equality
20. B Two-word verbs
21. D Adverbs
22. A Indirect object
23. C Nouns, present continuous passive
24. C Prepositions
25. A Verbs, adjective past participles

19. C the most poorly, Adverbs with past participles
20. A about two sisters who meet.
21. B be, Proposal clause
22. A who, Relative pronoun
23. C more quickly, Adverbs
24. A had been equipped, Past perfect
25. D three-mile, Nouns as adjectives
26. C primarily, Adverbs
27. B typewriter, Possessive nouns
28. D on, Prepositions
29. C as well as, Adverbs
30. D what she should do, Nominative clause
31. A to get, Infinitive
32. A in whose care, Relative pronouns with prepositions
33. D we/we did, Subject pronouns
34. A those, Demonstrative pronouns
35. A them, Object pronoun
36. A active, Suffixes, nouns and adjectives



## SECTION VIII

## Exercise VIII. 1.

1. Jack think, thinks
2. a percentage are given, is given
3. Mary
4. One have decided, has decided; people expresses, express
5. effects
6. Rice were served, was served
7. chance were, was
8. Terry, only one who
9. comments
10. every painting have been donated, has been donated

## Exercise VIII. 2.

1. anyone their, his (or her)
2. one your, his or her
3. Every boy and girl his, his and her
4. no clear antecedent which, This experience
5. Neither they, she
6. you one, you
7. many a their, his or her
8. they, people
9. Members its, their
10. no clear antecedent them, the socks

## Exercise VIII. 5.

(Sample conjunctions are given.)

1. She went to bed early; however, she didn't sleep well.
2. Rosa likes to read poetry; moreover, she sometimes writes her own poetry.
3. She eats only low-calorie food because she wants to remain slim.
4. Lincoln had been a successful lawyer before he became president.
5. Dr. Jenner developed a vaccine for smallpox; consequently, many people were saved.
6. I didn't carry an umbrella; as a result, I got wet.
7. Some think that he is unfriendly; on the contrary, he likes people very much.
8. Since Leo arose at 6:00 A.M., he hasn't eaten anything.
9. It's rude to keep people waiting unnecessarily; furthermore, it's a waste of valuable time.
10. We'd better hurry or else we'll miss the train.
11. While he was lecturing about the mysteries of the mind, he dropped his notes.

## Exercise VIII. 7.

1. prepared prepares; left leaves
2. throws threw; runs ran; scores scored
3. tells, told; went had gone, gave gives
4. bought buy, were are

## Exercise VIII. 8

(Answers should be similar to those given below.)

2. To estimate the success of such a project, the accountant used a computer.
3. Roger, stopped for speeding, was given a ticket.
4. Drinking (or while drinking) a cup of coffee, Tom spilled it on his homework.
5. Bill, being in a hurry, took the route through the desert.
6. The table, having been made (or made) from cherry wood, was, I thought, beautiful.
7. Considering many items, the importer tried to find one that would sell well.
8. Liao, having reported his dog lost, is searching the city streets for him.

11. deal they
12. Most jewelry pieces has been sold, have been sold
13. To visit zoos are, is
14. people income exceed, exceeds
15. price have decreased, has decreased; prices has increased, have increased
16. Learning have interested, has interested
17. Whoever are finished, is finished
18. ornithologists a number is, are
19. Neither
20. Many a have regretted, has regretted; they

11. Somebody
12. Nobody they, he or she
13. Each their, his and her
14. rat his, its
15. you you're, your
16. assistants
17. mind he, Mr. Patel
18. dog
19. president their, his
20. she himself, herself

12. Doctors state that exercise is beneficial; nevertheless, one should not overdo it.
13. Ingredients must be listed on food products so that people will be able to buy wisely.
14. Inasmuch as programs showing violence may be harmful to children, many parents want such programs removed from television.
15. She won't enroll next fall unless she can get a college loan.
16. Mark is a marvelous potter; as a matter of fact, many of his pieces have been shown in the Frank Lloyd Wright exhibition house.
17. The bay has become contaminated with chemicals; thus it isn't safe to eat the fish from the bay.
18. Although he slept eleven hours last night, he is still tired.

5. is afraid was afraid; has had
6. would be able will be able; used uses
7. would be featured will be featured; is a guide will be a guide; explain, will explain; learn will have learned

9. Ed believes his invention, having been considerably improved, (or considerably improved) will be a success.
10. Before taking the test, the students were given instructions.
11. To earn extra money, Peggy had to work overtime.
12. Viewed from afar, the rock formations looked like buildings.
13. The medical advice which the clinic offered was appreciated by the patients.
14. The new airport installations were, of course, of great interest to Mr. Sjoberg, a retired pilot.



## Exercise VIII. 9.

2. Formed from plants thousands of years ago, coal has been an important source of energy for the United States.
3. Rushing to find gold in 1848, people neglected their farms, families, and businesses.
4. Having read many books on raising children, Mel thought he was an expert.
5. The novel, after having been (or: after being) promoted by the publisher, sold widely.
6. Being a geologist, Sima has great knowledge of glacier movement.

## Exercise VIII. 10.

1. ... file folders, and stationery.
2. ... but she likes (she does like) raw clams.
3. ... and then have some lunch.
4. ... and get advice when needed.
5. ... and Gloria was riding behind him.
6. ... but also insulting.
7. ... and (had) written.
8. ... and walking.
9. ... but he can't write it.
10. ... dental and medical expenses.
11. ... and to provide jobs.

## Exercise VIII. 11.

1. Arches, used architecturally, are both strong and beautiful.
2. An arbitrator not only listens to both sides in an argument, but also helps people come to an agreement.
3. A neutral substance is neither acidic nor alkaline.
4. Arnold will both attend graduate school and teach a class.

## Exercise VIII. 12.

1. The senator from Iowa has announced plans to run for office again in the next election.
2. Doctor Park told us that he enjoyed ballet more than symphony music.
3. The machine may not, despite efforts to correct it, ever be without defects.
4. Not only were the streets full of holes, but also the street lights didn't work.
5. Some prints were available. Others were shown without frames.
6. Having carefully followed the procedure, Victor was disappointed when the experiment failed.
7. We noticed a woman about twenty years old sitting at the typewriter.
8. John is worried about all of the questions he will have to answer when he is at a job interview tomorrow.
9. Mr. Naro received a telegram yesterday while he was teaching.
10. Everyone enjoys the beauty of the national parks. Park guests can learn about the great variety of flora and fauna by going on guided walks with the rangers.
11. Activities will be planned for both young and mature adults.

## Exercise VIII. 13.

(Sample answers are given.)

1. Declaring that the water levels were low after a long absence of rain, experts warned people to use less water; otherwise a serious situation could develop.
2. With three ships and a number of sailors, Columbus left Spain in 1492 to find the new route to India. Many of the

7. The two men, having agreed on the price of the car, shook hands.
8. The Constitution, written after the American states had won their independence, is considered to be a remarkable historical document.
9. Being a carpenter, Carl knows how to repair his own roof.
10. An analyst for the aerospace industry, Miss Reuter will show charts demonstrating recent advances.

12. ... and because of having to take care of
13. ... and prepare a program suitable for everyone.
14. ... not to interfere with nor to worry about
15. ... and how to determine
16. ... is neither moderate
17. ... but everyone can.
18. ... both attractive and successful.
19. ... and compose music.
20. ... and dangerous.
21. ... and because the prosecutors
22. ... better than it cuts.

5. The company promised either to repair the product or to send a replacement.
6. He not only didn't receive compensation but also didn't receive any acknowledgment.
7. The play was not only excellent but also beautifully performed.

12. When the rate for loans was lowered, an improved economy was expected.
13. Melvin spent the evening reading, listening to a new record, and reviewing the notes of his speech.
14. Gaston invited the woman who was wearing a white dress to dance with him.
15. Finally someone provided a logical solution to the problem.
16. Unable to find his way home, he used the North Star to guide him.
17. It was wonderful to see all of my friends again.
18. When he learned of his dog's death, he grew depressed.
19. After assisting in the administration of training programs, Mrs. DiCarlo was appointed as chief of staff.
20. Limericks used to be popular but they are rarely written anymore. (or: rarely are they written anymore.)
21. Before Luba signed her name, she studied the petition carefully.
22. Even though there are laws to protect consumers, there is a lack of enforcement.

sailors on the ships, however, became frightened when there were no other ships in view, and wanted to turn back.

3. Released from jail recently, Joe can't get a job because prospective employers can see Joe's jail rec-



- ord. Joe, feeling that this practice is unfair and that his jail record should be sealed, is suing the city.
4. Although the Namib Desert in Africa looks lifeless because of almost no rain, it has a number of unusual

plants and animals which scientists like to study. According to scientists occasional fog that rolls in from the ocean provides the desert with moisture.

## ANSWERS TO SIMULATED TOEFL TESTS

The structure and the reference to the explanation is given after each answer.

## Pretest

1. D *Used to and would in past tense*
  2. B *Types of clauses and sentences. Like as preposition*
  3. D *Nouns*
  4. C *Reporting verbs*
  5. A *Proposal clauses*
  6. B *Past continuous*
  7. D *Using participles and phrases*
  8. A *Past modal*
  9. C *Demonstrative pronouns; adjectives of equality*
  10. D *Parallel structure*
  11. A *Past tense with past perfect*
  12. B *Using participles and phrases*
  13. A *Direct speech*
  14. B *Variation of endings*
  15. C *Conjunctions*
  16. B *his or her. Pronoun-antecedent agreement*
  17. D *any other artist. Comparative of indefinite adjectives and pronouns*
  18. B *animal. Nouns*
  19. A *traffic. Nouns*
  20. A *The article stated. Independent and dependent clauses*
- Test 1.
1. C *Prepositions*
  2. D *Demonstrative pronouns*
  3. B *Parallel structure*
  4. C *Adverbs*
  5. A *Proposal form*
  6. D *Types of clauses and sentences*
  7. A *Using participles*
  8. C *Future perfect*
  9. B *Tag endings*
  10. B *Gerund construction as subject*
  11. D *Adjectives with countable and uncountable nouns*
  12. B *Hyphenated adjectives*
  13. C *As if as though. Conditional present-unreal*
  14. D *Double comparative adjectives*
  15. B *Using participles*
  16. B *had been. Past perfect*
  17. C *forms. Parallel structure*
  18. D *and. Special parallel structure*
  19. B *privately. Adverbs*
  20. D *can be either. Special parallel structure*
  21. A *to. Infinitives*
- Test 2.
1. C *Parallel structure*
  2. C *Parallel structure*
  3. B *Infinitives*
  4. B *Literary variation in sentence order*
  5. D *Types of sentences and clauses*
  6. A *Infinitives*
  7. D *Using participles; Types of clauses and sentences*
  8. B *Types of clauses and sentences; Using participles*
  9. B *Indirect speech*
  10. A *Present continuous*
  21. B *were. Subject-verb agreement*
  22. B *but also. Parallel structure*
  23. B *usually. Adverbs*
  24. D *thoughtfully. Parallel structure*
  25. A *by which. Relative pronouns*
  26. B *omit but. Conjunctions*
  27. C *omit they. Rules of written expression*
  28. A *built. Causative Passive*
  29. A *whose. Relative pronouns*
  30. D *to have been destroyed. Infinitives*
  31. D *larger. Comparative adjectives*
  32. B *hitting. Gerunds*
  33. C *lying. Verbs*
  34. C *us. Nonreflexive pronouns; Reflexive pronouns*
  35. B *who leaped. Relative pronouns*
  36. C *researchers say unemployment (etc.). Using participles*
  37. B *that. Reason with "that clause" in Common Errors*
  38. C *their. Gerund with possessive*
  39. A *hadn't died. Conditional, past unreal*
  40. C *from. Prepositions*
  22. C *want. Exception to present continuous*
  23. D *economics. Nouns*
  24. B *was getting. Establishing viewpoint*
  25. C *had been declining. Past perfect continuous*
  26. D *practiced/were practicing. Reporting verb*
  27. B *are running. Subject-verb agreement*
  28. A *hadn't. Conditional past unreal*
  29. A *realistically. Adverbs*
  30. D *as if. As if, conditional possible*
  31. B *a few. Adjectives*
  32. A *We. Subject pronouns*
  33. D *is often discussed. Types of clauses and sentences*
  34. C *to name. Infinitives after verbs*
  35. D *the present. Articles*
  36. A *was. Subject-verb agreement*
  37. D *their. Pronoun-antecedent agreement*
  38. D *give. Verbal forms compared*
  39. C *so that. Conjunctions*
  40. D *them. Pronoun-antecedent agreement*



11. B Present perfect  
 12. D Gerunds; Basic rules- avoid wordiness  
 13. A Adverbs  
 14. A Idioms and expressions  
 15. C Verbs followed by indirect objects  
 16. A nor. Neither-nor. Parallel structure  
 17. A that. Nonrelative pronoun  
 18. D to rise. Verbs  
 19. B could cause. Conditional present-pretend  
 20. D from 1937. Prepositions  
 21. D purchased and sold. Passive  
 22. D further. Adverbs  
 23. A omit in November. Basic rules  
 24. B heavily. Adverbs  
 25. C has been. Present perfect
- Test 3.
1. B Verbals-comparing  
 2. A Articles  
 3. A Present perfect; Passive or active voice  
 4. D Prepositions followed by gerunds  
 5. D Types of clauses and sentences  
 6. B Reporting verbs  
 7. A Parallel structure  
 8. A Basic rules-be direct. Modal in present time  
 9. B Proposal clause  
 10. C Demonstrative pronouns  
 11. D Adjective and adverb with countable and uncountable nouns  
 12. B Basic rules, double negative  
 13. B Perfect gerund -gerund with possessive  
 14. C Types of clauses and sentences  
 15. C Time and conditional clauses with future  
 16. A increasingly adverb  
 17. C omit "additional." Basic rules-avoid repetition  
 18. C less. Adjectives with countable and uncountable nouns  
 19. B health. Noun and adjective suffixes, Basic rules-correct part of speech  
 20. A Having sung Using participles
- Test 4
1. B Basic rules-active voice preferred. Parallel structure  
 2. C Conjunctions-punctuation  
 3. D Causative passive; Using participles  
 4. A Relative pronouns; Passive  
 5. A Relative pronouns  
 6. C Parallel structure  
 7. B Infinitives  
 8. D Reporting verbs  
 9. C Adjectives-forms of measure  
 10. B Verbals, infinitives  
 11. C Before and After with past tense  
 12. D Using participles-after time words  
 13. C Basic rules-avoid slang  
 14. A Prepositions  
 15. D Basic rules-avoid double negatives; Adverbs-anymore and yet  
 16. B half a year. Supplement-common errors  
 17. C than. Comparative adjectives and adverbs  
 18. B Mary. Nouns-possessive  
 19. D He's usually available. Types of sentences-avoid run-on sentences  
 20. C were. Subject-verb agreement
26. B have been domesticated. Subject-verb agreement  
 27. C number. Adverbs  
 28. C making. Gerunds  
 29. A Contradicting. Using participles  
 30. C was going. Subject-verb agreement  
 31. A take place. Tense consistency  
 32. B whose. Relative pronoun  
 33. A primarily. Adverbs  
 34. B harvest. Verb word  
 35. A to the police. Reporting verbs  
 36. B omit but. Conjunctions  
 37. B had chosen. Past perfect  
 38. C omit more. Comparative adjectives  
 39. B let. Verbs  
 40. B from which. Relative pronoun with preposition
21. A offices. Countable nouns  
 22. B its. Pronoun-antecedent agreement  
 23. B had given. Past perfect. Parallel structure  
 24. D will be played. Passive voice  
 25. C the worst. Comparative adjectives and adverbs  
 26. B useless. Adjectives  
 27. B interested. Adjectives and participles  
 28. C running. Gerunds  
 29. A sometimes wants. Position of frequency adverbs in present tense  
 30. C who. Relative pronouns  
 31. C one (or: he or she). Pronoun-antecedent agreement  
 32. B didn't require. Would rather, nonproposal form  
 33. C as. Prepositions  
 34. B knew how to. Know how to in modals and expressions  
 35. B has voted. Subject-verb agreement  
 36. D as. Equality in adjectives and adverbs  
 37. D wanted to. Infinitives in short response  
 38. A travel. Establish point of view-tense consistency  
 39. A impatient. Adjective with linking verb  
 40. B had been. Past perfect
21. A those. Demonstrative pronouns  
 22. B address. Verbals, causative  
 23. C she. Subject pronoun  
 24. A realizing. Using participles  
 25. B played. Past tense; Active voice  
 26. B omit from. Relative pronoun  
 27. B more than enough. Adverbs  
 28. D an interesting cover. Parallel structure  
 29. C prepared. Causative passive  
 30. C were. Subject-verb agreement  
 31. A That. Nouns-pair  
 32. C as much as. Comparison of equality and inequality, adverbs  
 33. A Considering. Types of sentences; Using participles  
 34. A As carefully as. Comparative in adverbs  
 35. C the most cheaply. Adverbs  
 36. B objected to. Prepositions  
 37. D the high price. Conjunctions, because  
 38. C called. Past tense  
 39. D everyone else. Comparative of adjectives and pronouns  
 40. D many factories had been built. Types of clauses, sentence order



# Index

- A/an, 84-86
- A great deal of, 97
- A great many, *ae.*\* 99
- A lot of, 87, 97
- A number/the number, 130, 131
- Abstract nouns, 82
- Action verbs:
  - transitive/intransitive, 89
  - with adverbs, 100
  - compared with *be*/linking verbs, 94
- Active voice:
  - compared with passive, 36
  - with *show, agree, fall*, 38
  - with causative *have*, 75
  - usually used, 156
- Adjective clauses:
  - relative clauses, 112-14, 146
  - reduced to phrases, 146-48
- Adjective phrases, 94, 146-49
  - compared with clauses, 145-49
  - infinitive, 149
- Adjectives, 92-100
  - defined, 92
  - order of, 92
  - in adjective phrases, 94, 146
  - of emotion, 94, 95
  - present/past participles as, 93, 94
  - troublesome (*confusing/confused*), 93
  - open/closed, *n.*\*\* 94
  - with *be*/linking verbs, 94
  - comparison forms:
    - comparative/superlative, 95, 96
    - with single subject, 96
    - double comparative (*the more, the better*), 96

\*The letters *ae.* stand for *avoid errors*. Many points in the text appear under the heading of *avoid errors*.

- Adjectives, (*Cont.*)
  - with *of the two*, 96
  - with *between*, *ae.* 96
  - with *among*, *ae.* 97
  - equality (*as . . . as*), 97
  - indefinite adjectives (any other), 97
  - increasing degree (*longer and longer*), 97
  - not* with conclusive adj. (*perfect*), 97
  - with countable/uncountable nouns, (*much time, many hours*) 97, 98
  - of measure, 99
  - helpless/useless, 99
  - of hair color (*redhaired*), 99
  - suffixes of (*helpful*), 99
  - as nouns (*the strong*), 83
- Adverbial clauses, 141-43
- Adverbial conjunctions, 141-43
- Adverbs, 100-107
  - defined, 100
  - fast, early, late, 101
  - of frequency and measure, 6, 7, 158
  - with participles (*-ing, -ed*), 101
  - comparative/superlative of regular/irregular, 101
  - of equality, 102
  - enough, 102
  - such/so, 103
  - very/too, 103
  - very much/very many, *n.* 104
  - farther/further, 104
  - quite/pretty, 104
  - somewhat/rather, 104

\*\*The letter *n.* stands for *note*. Many points in the text are emphasized after the word *note*.



- Adverbs, (*Cont.*)  
 almost/nearly, 105  
 anymore/yet, 105  
 position of, 6, 106, 107
- After:  
 in past perfect, 19  
   past tense, *n.*20  
 in future, 26  
 in time clauses, 142  
 with present participle, *n.*147
- After/before, *n.*20
- Age, *ae.*7
- Agree, 38, 63, *n.*67
- Agreement:  
 with negative remark, *n.*46  
 of subject-verb, 129-32  
 of pronoun-antecedent, 133-36  
 in sequence of tenses, 51  
 in complex sentences (with adverbial clauses), 141-43  
 in writing, 144, 145
- Almost/nearly, 105
- Although/even though, 142
- Amount/number, 98, *ae.*99
- And:  
 as correlative conjunction, 129, 137, 141  
 with *both*, *n.*153
- Another/the other, 98
- Antecedent, 110, 134, 135
- Any/some, 98, *ae.*99
- Anymore/yet/no longer, 105
- Any other/someone else, 97
- Appositive (Joe, a student), 82, 137, 146
- Articles, 84-88  
 a/an, 84-86  
   with single designation, 85  
   omitted, 85-87  
 the, 85-87  
   omitted, 85-87  
   with ordinal numbers, 86  
   omitted with cardinal numbers, 86
- As:  
 or while, 18  
 with *as*, 97  
 with *same*, 97  
 compared with *like*, *n.*120, 121
- As if/as though, 58
- Basic rules of written expression, 154-57, 138-40
- Be:  
 in present and past tense, 6, 16  
 in present and past continuous, 9, 17, 18  
 with *going to*, 26  
 in passive voice, 36, 37  
 in questions/tag endings, 43, 45, 46  
 linking verbs used as (*feel, look*), 94
- Because/because of, 142
- Before, *n.*20, 26, 141, *n.*147
- Being, 9, 18, 37
- Besides, 143 (*see Misused words*)
- Best, 101, 102
- Between, *ae.*96, 109, *ae.*120
- Both:  
 with plural verb, 130  
 in parallel structure, 153, *ae.*153  
 with *and*, *ae.*153
- Bring/take, 90
- But:  
 in tag endings, 45, 46  
 as correlative conjunction, 141  
 in parallel structure, 152
- By, 36, 72
- By means of, 120
- By the time:  
 with past perfect, *n.*19, 19  
 with future perfect, 31, *n.*32, *ae.*32
- Can/could/could have (*see Modals*)
- Causative form (have him repair):  
 in passive voice (*have/get*), 39  
 in active voice (*have*), 75
- Clauses:  
 independent/dependent, 137, 138  
 adverbial (conjunctive), 141, 143  
 of time (*as soon as*), 26, *ae.*29, 142  
 noun (*said that he was ill*), 50, 52, 58, 76, 120, 130  
 real/unreal conditional, 55-59
- Comparative forms:  
 of adjectives, 95-97  
 of adverbs, 101, 102  
 of pronouns, 97, 112  
 with *prefer/would rather/similar to*, 97, 112
- Comparing tenses, 13, 23, 32
- Comparison of verb forms, 9, 13, *n.*20, *ae.*21, 22, 23, 26, *n.*26, 27, *n.*29, 30, 31, 32, 36, 37, *n.*37, 50, 51, 55
- Complex sentence (*see Sentences*)
- Compound Sentence (*see Sentences*)



- Conditional forms (if/as if/wish):  
 explained, 55  
 present-general, 55  
 future possible, 55, 57  
 unreal, 55-59
- Confusing/confused, 93
- Conjunctions, 141-43  
 'how used, 141  
 correlative/adverbial/transitional, 141
- Continuous forms:  
 in tenses 9, 13, 17, 20, 27, 30, 32  
 in infinitives, 64, 65, 30
- Contractions, 180
- Correlative conjunction, 141
- Could/be able, *n.* 16, 23
- Could/could have (*see* Modals)
- Countable nouns, 82, 97, 98, *ae.* 99, 129
- Dangling participles**, *n.* 147
- Despite/in spite of, 142
- Demonstrative pronouns (this/that), 111, 112
- Different from, 97, 119
- Direct/indirect speech, 50-*n.* 53
- Do/does/did:  
 in questions, 43  
 in emphatic statements, 17  
 in tag endings, 45, 46  
 with verb words, 74  
 in idioms, 184  
*not* do with *like*, 27
- Double comparatives, 96
- Each/every**, 98, 130
- Either/neither:  
 in tag endings, 46  
 as adjectives, 98  
 as singular nouns, 131  
 with *or/nor*, 130, *ae.* 132  
 in parallel structure, 153
- Enough, 63, 102
- Except, *ae.* 120
- Expect/hope/plan/intend, 28, 30, 38
- Farther/further**, 104
- Fast, 101
- Few/fewer/fewest, 98  
 a few, a little/few, little, 98
- Few with *very*, 103
- Forbid, 70
- Forget, 66, 69, 70
- Formation of questions, tag endings and negative questions:  
 formation of questions, 43-45  
 tag endings, 45-47  
 negative questions, 47
- Future continuous, 30  
 defined, 30  
 compared with present continuous, 30  
 modals/infinitives in, 30  
 in synopsis (compared), 32
- Future perfect, 31  
 defined, 31  
 compared with present perfect, 31  
 alternatives to, *n.* 31, 32  
 in synopsis, 32
- Future perfect continuous, 32  
 defined, 32  
 with time length, 32  
 in synopsis, 32
- Future tense, 26  
 defined, 26  
 with *will/be going to*, 26  
 with time and conditional clauses, 26  
 with *would like/care*, 27  
 in synopsis, 32  
 in future possible clauses, 55, 57
- Future time forms, 26-32  
 future tense, 26  
 modals in, 27-29  
 future continuous, 30  
 future perfect, 31, 32  
 future perfect continuous, 32  
 present continuous in, 27
- Gerunds (he went fishing)**, 68-73  
 compared with other verbals, 63  
 defined, 68  
 with possessive (*his singing*), 68  
 in phrases, *n.* 68  
 with verbs (list), 69  
 and infinitives with verbs (list), 69, 70  
 with *need*, 70  
 with idioms and expressions, 70  
 with prepositions, 71, 118  
 perfect/passive/perfect passive, 72, 73  
 as subject, 68, 130  
 with *go*, 71  
 with *by*, 72
- Had better** 28, *ae.* 29, 74
- Hang/hang, 90
- Hard, 101



- Hardly, *n.* 7
- Have/has:
- in present tense, 61
  - as auxiliary, 11-13
  - in passive, 36, 37
  - in causative forms, 39, 75
- Have to, 8, 28
- Having:
- in perfect gerund forms, 72, 73
  - in perfect participle adjective phrases, 147, 148
- Helpless/useless, 99
- Highly/very, 154, *ae.* 155
- Hope, 28, *n.* 38, 66
- How, 43, 52, 53, 120
- However, 142
- If:
- in present tense (general), 6, 55
  - in present tense clause with future, 26, 55, 57
  - in indirect speech (for yes/no response), 52
  - in conditional real/unreal clauses, 55-58
    - omitted in unreal clauses, 57
    - with *should*, 57
    - with *even*, 57
    - with *as* (as if), 58
- In case/in the event, 57, 142
- Indefinite adjectives, 97
- Indefinite pronouns, 97, 130 (list)
- Independent (main)/dependent (subordinate) clauses, 137
- Indirect object (give *her* a book), 91
- Indirect/direct speech (said he was ill), 50-53
- Infinitives, 63-67, 69
  - compared with other verbals, 63, *n.* 68
  - with verbs, 63, 65, 66, 69
  - with *not*, 63
  - with adjectives, 63, *n.* 149
  - of purpose, 63, 149
  - with *too*, 63
  - with *enough*, 63, 102
  - in phrases, 64
  - with information words (what to do), 63, 64
  - separation rule, *ae.* 64
  - as subject/object, 64, 130
  - as adjective phrase, 146, 149
  - without *to*, 74
- Information words (who, how, when):
  - in questions, 43, 44
  - in noun clauses, 52, 53, 120
  - after prepositions, 120
- In order to, 63
- In spite of/despite, 142
- Interesting/interested, 93
- It, 64, 108, 109
- It's/its, *ae.* 135
- Kind/kinds, *n.* 105, 111, *n.* 131
  - not with adjectives, *n.* 105
- Know how to (ability), 8, 63
- Leave/let, 90
- Lend/borrow, 90
- Let/leave, 90
- Let/make, 74
- Let's, 47
- Lie/lay, 89
- Like:
  - with *would* (polite), 27
  - not with *do*, 27
  - as a preposition, 117
  - compared with *as* and *as if*, *n.* 120, *ae.* 120
- Linking verbs (seem, feel), 94
- Literary variation (as does he), 158, 159
- Little/less/least, 98, *ae.* 99, 101, 102
  - a little, 98
  - little/few, 98
  - little with *very*, 103
- Mainly/primarily, 100
- Make:
  - with verb word, 74
  - with indirect object, 91
  - in idioms, 188, 189
- Many/many of, 87, 194
- Many/much, 97, 130, 131
- May/might (*see* Modals)
- Measure, 7, 99, 102
- Mind (with gerund), 78
- Misused words, 194
- Modals (will, can, must), 8
  - explained, 7, 8
  - present/present continuous, 7, 8, 10, 11
  - past/past continuous, 22, 23
  - future/future continuous, 28, 29, 30
  - in passive, 37
  - in causative passive, 39
  - in questions and tag endings, 43, 46, 47



- Modals, (Cont.)**  
 in indirect speech, 51, 52  
 in conditional clauses, 55-59  
**Modifying adjective phrases, 94, 146-49**  
**More, 97, 98, 101, 102**  
**Moreover, 143**  
**Most (indefinite pronoun), 130**  
**Most/almost, 105**  
**Much/many, 97, *ae.*99, 104**  
 as indefinite pronoun, 104, 130, 131  
**Much/more/the most, 96, 101**  
**Must (see Modals):**  
 necessity, 8, 9, 28  
**Must/may:**  
 assumption (probability), 8, 10, *ae.*10, 22, 23  
**Myself/themselves, 110, 111**
- Need, *n.*70**  
**Need not, 77**  
**Negative forms:**  
 adverbs of frequency and measure, 6, 7, 158  
 in tag endings, 45, 46  
 in negative questions, 47  
**Neither/either, 45, 46, 98, 130, 131**  
**Neither/nor, either/or, 130, *n.*131, 153**  
**Not only . . . but also, 153, 158**  
**Noun clauses:**  
 explained, 50, 52, 120  
 in indirect speech, 50-53  
 after *wish*, 58  
 with proposal verbs, 76  
 as objects of prepositions, 120  
 as subject, 130  
**Nouns:**  
 how used, 82  
 countable/uncountable, 82  
 abstract/mass/collective, 82  
 singular with *s*, 83  
 two-part items, 83  
 singular/plural, 83  
 listed as subjects, 130  
 from adjectives, 83  
 used as adjectives, 83  
 possessive form of, 84  
 compound, 84  
 suffixes of (*kindness, wealth*), 84  
 gerunds as, 68  
 infinitives as, 64  
 noun clauses as, 50, 52, 120  
**Now, 9**
- Number of/amount of, 98**
- Object:**  
 of verbs (transitive), 89  
 of preposition, 116  
 indirect, 91  
 in sentence order, 136  
 noun clause as, 50, 52, 120  
**Object pronoun (him, them), 109, 110**  
**Of/in:**  
 with superlative forms, 96  
 in prepositional phrases, 117, 119, 120  
**One/one's, 135**  
**Only:**  
 with a little/a few, *n.*98  
 special word order, 153  
 as negative adverb, 158  
 in subject-verb agreement, *n.*131  
**On the contrary, 143**  
**On the other hand, 143**  
**Open/closed, *n.*94**  
**Or else, 143**  
**Other/the other/another, 98, *ae.*99**  
**Otherwise, 143**
- Parallel structure (jogging and hiking):**  
 with *and, but, than*, 151  
 with commas, 151  
 with *both, only, not only . . . but also*, 153  
**Participial adjectives, 93, 94**  
**Participial phrases, 94, 146-50**  
**Parts of speech:**  
 correct use of, 156  
 suffixes, 84, 99  
**Passive voice, 36-38**  
 compared with active, 36  
 not usually used, 36, 156  
 with transitive verbs only, 36, *n.*38, 89  
 in various tenses and modals, 37  
 in infinitives, 37, 65, *ae.*66, *n.*67, *n.*70  
 with causative, 39  
 in indirect speech, 51  
 in conditional clauses, 56-59  
 in gerunds, 72  
 in past participle phrases, 94, 148, 149  
**Past continuous, 17**  
 defined, 17  
 in synopsis, 23  
 in indirect speech, 51  
**Past participles:**  
 in present perfect, 11  
 in past perfect, 19



- Past participles, (*Cont.*)  
 in passive voice, 36, 37  
 in causative passive, 39  
 in perfect gerund, 72  
 in passive gerund, 72  
 as adjectives, 93  
 in adjective phrases, 94, 146-49
- Past perfect, 19  
 defined, 19, 20  
 implied, *n.20*  
 with *after/before*, *n.20*  
 in indirect speech, 19, 51, 52  
 in synopsis, 23  
 in passive voice, 37, *ae.37*  
 in past/unreal clauses, 55-59
- Past perfect continuous, 20  
 defined, 20  
 in indirect speech, 20, 51  
 in synopsis, 23  
 with past unreal clauses, 57, 58
- Past tense, 16, 17  
 defined, 16  
 used to/would, 16, 17  
 with *deceased*, 17  
 with present perfect, 11, 12  
 with past continuous, 17, 18  
 with past perfect, 19, 20  
 with past perfect continuous, 20, 21  
 in indirect speech, *n.19*, 51, 52  
 in synopsis, 23  
 in passive voice, 36, 37  
 with present unreal clauses, 55-59
- Past time forms, 16-23  
 past tense, 16, 17  
 past continuous, 17, 18  
 past perfect, 19  
 past perfect continuous, 20, 21  
 modals in, 22, 23  
 synopsis of, 23
- Past unreal clauses (*if/as if/wish*), 55-59
- Percent/percentage, 130, 131, 132
- Personal pronouns, 108-10
- Phrases, 145, 146  
 compared with clauses, 145-48  
 adjective, 146-49  
 adverbial, 146  
 infinitive, 146  
 participial, 146  
 prepositional, 146  
 gerund, *n.68*  
 infinitive, 64
- Plan/be planning, 28, 66
- Possessive:  
 nouns with apostrophe, *n.84*, 84  
 with gerunds, 68, 69  
 pronouns, 110, *ae.114*
- Prefer, 69, 97, 112
- Prepositions, 116-20  
 in phrases, 116  
 general meaning, 116-18  
 following verbs, 118, 119  
 following adjectives/past participles,  
 119  
 following nouns, 119  
 in expressions, 120  
 with noun clause object, 120  
 lists of, 118-20  
 with *who/whose/which*, 44, 114
- Present continuous tense, 9  
 defined, 9  
 in future events, 27  
 in synopsis, 13  
 not used with *hear, know*, etc., 9
- Present participles:  
 in continuous tenses, 9, 13, 17, 20  
 with infinitive, 64, 65  
 following object + *see/hear/find*, 75  
 as adjectives, 93  
 in adjective phrases, 146-49
- Present perfect continuous, 13  
 defined, 13  
 in synopsis, 13
- Present perfect tense, 11, 12  
 defined, 11  
 distinctions, 12  
 words used with (*since, for*), 11, 12  
 in synopsis, 13  
 with future forms, *n.26*  
 in passive voice, 37
- Present tense, 6, 7  
 defined, 6  
 in commands and requests, 6  
 with frequency adverbs, 6, 7  
 in expressing age, *ae.7*  
 in synopsis, 13  
 in future time, 26-29  
 in passive voice, 37  
 in causative passive, 39
- Present time forms, 6-13  
 present tense, 6  
 modals, 7-9  
 present continuous, 9, 10  
 modals, 10  
 present perfect, 11-13



- Present time forms, (*Cont.*)  
 present perfect continuous, 13  
 synopsis of, 13
- Present-unreal clauses, 55-59
- Principal parts of verbs, 180, 182
- Pronouns, 108-14  
 types of, 108, 109  
 subject, 108, 109  
 object, 109, 110  
 possessive adjective, 110  
 possessive noun, 110  
 reflexive, 110, 111  
 demonstrative, 111, 112  
 relative, 112-14  
 in comparative form, 97, 109  
 indefinite list (*some, any*), 130  
 antecedent agreement, 110, 133-36
- Proposal forms (*suggest he attend*), 76, 77  
 explained, 76  
 verb words used, 76  
 verbs in, 76  
 clauses, 76, 77  
 alternate forms, 77, 78
- Question formation (*see Formation of questions*)
- Quite/pretty, 104
- Real, *n.* 104
- Reflexive pronouns, 110
- Relative clauses, 112, 113
- Repetition, 154, 155
- Reporting verbs (*said, thought*), 50, 51
- Rise/raise, 89
- Rules of writing, 138-40, 154-57
- Run-on sentences, 139
- Scarcely, 7, 158
- Seldom/rarely, 7, 158
- Semicolon, 141
- Sentences, 136-38  
 general order of, 136  
 variety in, 137, 138, 157  
 clauses:  
 independent/dependent, 137  
 types of:  
 simple, 137  
 compound, 137, 138  
 complex, 138  
 compound-complex, 138  
 avoid errors in, 138-40, 155-59
- Sequence of tenses (*indirect speech*), 51
- Shall, 26, 47
- Should/should have (*see Modals*)
- Similar to, 112, 119
- Simple form of verb (*see Verb words*)
- Simple sentences (*see Sentences*)
- Since/for:  
 with present perfect, 11  
 meaning *because*, 142
- Singular/plural:  
 countable/uncountable, 82, 83  
 in subject-verb agreement, 129  
 list of nouns/pronouns, 130  
 plural used as singular, 131  
 with *one/only one/one who*, *n.* 131
- Sit/set, 89
- So, 45, 46, 142
- So/so that, *see* 143
- So/such, 103, *n.* 104
- Some/any, 98
- Somewhat/rather, 104
- Somewhere else, 97
- Subject:  
 agreement with verbs, 129-32  
 position of:  
 in questions, 43  
 in statements, 136, 137  
 in modifying adjective phrases, 146  
 with appositive, 146  
 gerund as, 130  
 infinitive as, 130  
 noun clause as, 130
- Subject pronoun, 108, 109
- Subjunctive mood (*contrary to fact*):  
 explained, 55  
 in conditional clauses, 55-59  
 in proposal forms, 76, 77
- Such/so, 103  
 with *little/few/much/many*, 103
- Suffixes of nouns/adjectives, 84, 99
- Suggest/recommend, 69, 76
- Superlative forms, 95, 96
- Suppose/be supposed to, 90
- Synopses of tenses, 13, 23, 32
- Tag endings (*and so is he*), 45, 46, *n.* 46, 47
- Tenses (*see specific tense*):  
 in active voice, section I  
 in passive voice, section II  
 agreement:  
 in indirect speech, 51  
 between clause and tag ending, 45, 46



- Tenses (*see specific tense*): (*Cont.*)  
 between clauses in complex/  
 compound sentences, 141-43  
 between sentences, 144, 145
- Than:  
 in comparative form, 95  
 with *would rather*, 97
- That clauses:  
 in indirect speech, 50-52  
 instead of infinitive, 67  
 in proposal forms, 76-78  
 with adjectives of emotion, 95  
 with *such* and *so*, 103  
 as relative clauses, 112, 113
- The, 85-88
- The same as, 97
- There/here, 126, 130, 132
- Therefore/consequently, 141, 142
- Three times as much as, 102
- To:  
 in infinitives, 63-67  
 as preposition, 116-20  
 with *prefer*, 97, 112
- Too/very, 103, *n.*104
- Too + infinitive (too big to), 63
- Transitional conjunctions, 141-43.
- Transitive/intransitive verbs, 36; 89, 91
- Twice as much as/half as many as, 102
- Two-word verbs, 91
- Types of sentences (*see Sentences*)
- Uncountable nouns, 82, 97, 98, *ae.*99,  
 129
- Unless, 26, 55, 142
- Until, 26
- Used to/be used to/use, 16, *n.*17, 90
- Used to/would, 16
- Using participles and phrases, 145-50
- Verbals (*infin./gerund/verb word*), 63-78  
 alternatives, 77, 78
- Verbs, 89-91  
 how used, 89  
 principal parts of, 180-82  
 transitive/intransitive, 36, 89
- Verbs, 89-91 (*Cont.*)  
 active/passive, 36  
 followed by infinitives, 66, 69  
 followed by gerunds, 69  
 followed by verb words, 74-78  
 followed by indirect object, 91  
 followed by preposition, 118, 119  
 troublesome, 89, 90  
 two-word, 91, 182-92  
 be/linking (*seem, feel*), 94  
 action with adverbs, 100  
 not used in continuous, 9  
 agree with subject, 129, 130  
 comparison of (*see Comparison of verb  
 forms*)
- Verb words (*me go.*), 74-77  
 defined,  
 with modals, 74  
 with *let/make*, 74  
 with *see/hear/feel*, 75  
 with causative active, 39  
 with proposal forms, 76, 77
- Very, 103, 104, *ae.*155
- Very much/very many, 104
- Very/too, 103
- Voice (active/passive), 36
- When, 26, 141, 146, *ae.*146, 147
- Where 113, *ae.*114
- Whether/if, 52, *ae.*53
- Which/that, 44, 13, *ae.*114
- While, 17, 18, 142
- Who/whom, 44, 112-14, 52, 53, 120
- Whoever, 112, 114, 130, 131
- Whose, 44, 110, *ae.*114, 135
- Wish, 58, 59
- Word errors, 192-95, 156
- Worse/the worst, 96, *ae.*96
- Would/would have (*see Modals*)
- Would like/care for, 27, 29
- Would rather, 97, 74, 77
- Writing rules, 138-40, 154-59
- Writing structure and form, 129-59
- Yet, 12, 19, 105



---

# ENGLISH GRAMMAR DIGEST

---

ADVANCED \* TOEFL PREPARATION \* REMEDIAL REVIEW

---

## TRUDY ARONSON

---

The *English Grammar Digest* is a developmental review course in grammar and writing structure for advanced ESL students. It is designed to improve sentence writing skills and also to prepare students effectively for the "Structure and Written Expression" section of the TOEFL and other college-qualifying English tests. The book contains easy-to-understand explanations; helpful clues; numerous examples; contrasts and comparisons; "alerts" to avoid commonly-made errors; overwriting reinforcement; varied and challenging tests which include both progressively difficult TOEFL-type tests and full simulated TOEFL tests; and many common American idioms.

In this practical new book, Trudy Aronson highlights:

- A graphic and illuminating presentation that includes contrasts and comparisons and "doz" and "dofTs" for greater clarity and awareness.
- Complete grounding of fundamentals leading to sentence forms and styles.
- A large number of examples modeling each structure, Writing rule and sentence form.
- A variety of exercises and tests, placed after each structure and including both speaking and writing.
- Graduated TOEFL-type tests as well as exciting simulated TOEFL tests to prepare student for full complexity of actual TOEFL and other tests.
- Independent study aspects enabling and encouraging students to "catch up" and to assume more responsibility on their own behalf.
- Answers and references on perforated pages in back of book for class and/or self checking.